

CO

(12) INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization
International Bureau



(43) International Publication Date
23 May 2002 (23.05.2002)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number
WO 02/40471 A2

(51) International Patent Classification: C07D 403/12,
401/14, 405/14, 409/14, 443/14, 413/12, 405/12, 405/12,
417/12, 403/14, 403/14, 435/04, 223/16, 403/04, A61K
31/55, A61P 25/18

Essex CM19 5AW (GB). **STEMP, Geoffrey** [GB/GB];
GlaxoSmithKline, New Frontiers Science Park South,
Third Avenue, Harlow, Essex CM19 5AW (GB).

(21) International Application Number: PCT/EP01/13140

(74) Agent: **THOMPSON, Clive, Beresford**; GlaxoSmithK-
line, Corporate Intellectual Property (CN9.25.1), 980 Great
West Road, Brentford, Middlesex TW8 9GS (GB).

(22) International Filing Date:
12 November 2001 (12.11.2001)

(81) Designated States (national): AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU,
AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CO, CR, CU,
CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM,
HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK,
LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX,
MZ, NO, NZ, PH, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK,
SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZA,
ZW.

(25) Filing Language: English

(26) Publication Language: English

(30) Priority Date:
0027784.8 14 November 2000 (14.11.2000) GB
0031082.1 20 December 2000 (20.12.2000) GB

(84) Designated States (regional): ARIPO patent (GH, GM,
KE, LS, MW, MZ, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian
patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European
patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE,
IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE, TR), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF,
CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD,
TG).

(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US):
SMITHKLINE BEECHAM P.L.C. [GB/GB]; New
Horizons Court, Brentford, Middlesex TW8 9EP (GB).

(72) Inventors; and

(75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): **HADLEY, Michael,**
Stewart [GB/GB]; GlaxoSmithKline, New Frontiers
Science Park South, Third Avenue, Harlow, Essex CM19
5AW (GB). **LIGHTFOOT, Andrew, P.** [GB/GB]; Glaxo-
SmithKline, New Frontiers Science Park South, Third
Avenue, Harlow, Essex CM19 5AW (GB). **MACDON-**
ALD, Gregor, James [GB/GB]; GlaxoSmithKline, New
Frontiers Science Park South, Third Avenue, Harlow,

Published:

— without international search report and to be republished
upon receipt of that report

For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guid-
ance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the begin-
ning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.

(54) Title: **TETRAHYDROBENZAZEPINE DERIVATIVES USEFUL AS MODULATORS OF DOPAMINE D3 RECEPTORS**
(ANTIPSYCHOTIC AGENTS)

(57) Abstract: The invention provides compounds of formula (I): wherein: R² and R³ independently represent various substituents; R¹ and R⁴ independently represent H, F, Cl, Br, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₃₋₆alkoxy, OH, CN, or NO₂; B represents a sulfur atom or a -CH₂- group; t represents 3 or 4; and A represents an optionally substituted 5- or 6- membered aromatic heterocyclic ring, or an optionally substituted bicyclic heterocyclic ring system in which at least the ring bound to the group B in Formula (I) is aromatic; or a salt thereof. Preferably, A is selected from one of the groups (i), (ii) or (iii): wherein X¹ and X² are independently N or CR⁵, and X³ is NR⁶, O or S; Y¹ and Y² are independently N or CR⁹, and Y³ is NR⁹, O or S; Z¹ is NR¹⁰, O or S, and Z² and Z³ are independently N or CR¹⁰; R⁵, R⁶, and R¹⁰ are as herein defined, and R⁷ is H, a halogen atom, OH, cyano, nitro, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkoxy, C₁₋₆alkylenedioxy, C₁₋₆alkanoyl, or C₁₋₆alkylsulfonyl, an optionally substituted 3-, 4-, 5- or 6-membered cycloalkyl ring, or a group of the formula (a), (b), (c) or (d) as defined by the formulas (a), (b), (c) or (d). The compounds are modulators of dopamine D₃ receptors and have potential in the treatment of psychotic conditions (e.g. schizophrenia) or substance abuse.

WO 02/40471 A2

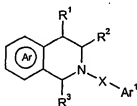
TETRAHYDROBENZAZEPINE DERIVATIVES USEFUL AS MODULATORS OF DOPAMINE D₃ RECEPTORS (ANTIPSYCHOTIC AGENTS)

- The present invention relates to novel tetrahydrobenzazepine derivatives,
 5 processes for their preparation, intermediates used in these processes, pharmaceutical compositions containing them and their use in therapy, as modulators of dopamine D₃ receptors, in particular as antipsychotic agents.


Background to the Invention

10

US Patent No. 5,294,621 describes tetrahydropyridine derivatives of the formula:



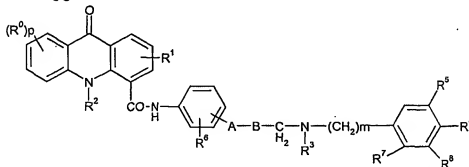
15

wherein  is an optionally substituted thienyl or optionally substituted phenyl ring; R¹, R² and R³ are each *inter alia* hydrogen; X is *inter alia* (CH₂)_mNR⁷CO; m is 2-4; and Ar¹ is an optionally substituted heterocyclic ring or an optionally substituted phenyl ring. The compounds are said to be useful as antiarrhythmic agents.

20

EPA 431,580 describes compounds which are said to be dopaminergic agents useful as antipsychotics, antihypertensives, etc. WO 95/10513 describes benzothiophene derivatives and related compounds as estrogen agonists.

EP 0 494 623 A1 (Laboratoires Glaxo) discloses acridine derivatives of the following general formula:

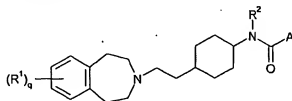


25

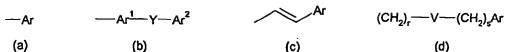
where A is O, S, a bond or CH₂NR⁹; B represents an optionally substituted C₁₋₄alkylene chain, m is 1 or 2; R³ is H or alkyl and R⁷ is H or R³ and R⁷ together from a group (CH₂)_n where n is 1 or 2. There are many examples of the chain -A-B-CH₂- including -S(CH₂)₃-. The preferred compounds are tetrahydroisquinoline acridines. These compounds are disclosed as being capable of sensitizing multidrug-resistant cancer cells

to chemotherapeutic agents. There appears to be no disclosure that these compounds have affinity for dopamine D₃ receptors or could be used in the treatment of psychotic conditions.

- WO 93/03025 (EP 0 596 120), WO 93/13105 (EP 0 596 125) and JP 07070135-A (all Yoshitomi Pharmaceutical Industries) disclose antipsychotic thiophene and condensed thiophene compounds. WO 93/20099 (Ferring) discloses CCK and/or gastrin receptor ligands to treat ulcers, anxiety, psychoses, etc. WO 98/07421 (Ishihara Sangyo Kaisha) discloses cycloalkyl-isoquinolinone and isoindolinone compounds as inhibitors of amino-peptidase N-enzyme.
- WO 97/43262, WO 98/06699, WO 98/49145, WO 98/50363, WO 98/50364, WO98/51671, WO 99/64412, WO 00/24717 (all SmithKline Beecham plc), N.E. Austin et al., *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1999, 9(2), 179-184, G. Stemp et al., *J. Med. Chem.*, 2000, 43(9), 1878-1885, C. Reavill et al., *J. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther.*, 2000, 294(3), 1154-1165, and C.R. Ashby et al., *J. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther.*, 2000, 294(3), 1166-1174, disclose tetrahydroisoquinoline derivatives having affinity for the dopamine D₃ receptor. WO 00/21950 discloses isoindoles having similar activity. Other D₃ modulators are disclosed in WO 96/30333, WO 97/47602, WO 94/03426, WO 94/24129, WO 95/00508, WO 95/16674, WO 95/21165, WO 95/22542, WO 97/00243 (all SmithKline Beecham) and in K.Y. Avenell, et al., *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1999, 9(18), 2715-2720, K.Y. Avenell et al., *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1998, 8(20), 2859-2864, I. Boyfield et al., *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7(15), 1995-1998, D. Bolton et al., *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7(4), 485-488 and I. Boyfield et al., *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7(3), 327-330.
- Other publications disclosing compounds allegedly having affinity for dopamine receptor(s) include: JP 10287631 A2 and EP 773223 A1 (Adir), JP 09291034 A2 (Yoshitomi), WO 97/38989, WO 97/34889, WO 97/31916, US 5633376, WO 96/25411, WO 96/16040, and WO 96/10018 (all Neurogen), WO 97/34889 and US 5414010 (Warner-Lambert), WO 95/29891 and WO 95/08533 (Yamanouchi), and US 5478934 (Jun Yuan).
- WO 00/42036 (BASF) discloses a series of 1,2,4-triazoles linked by various linking groups to tetrahydroisoquinolines or isoindoles, which are disclosed as having affinity for the dopamine D₃ receptor. Other alleged D₃ modulators are disclosed in WO 00/42037, WO 00/42038, DE 19728996 A1, WO 96/02519, WO 97/25324, WO 96/02249, WO 96/02246, WO 96/02520 and DE 4425146 (all BASF).
- WO 00/21951 (SmithKline Beecham) discloses tetrahydrobenzazepine compounds of the following formula:



wherein R¹ and R² are independently H or various substituents; q is 1 or 2; and A represents a group of the formula (a), (b), (c) or (d):



- wherein Ar represents an optionally substituted phenyl ring or an optionally substituted 5- or 6- membered aromatic heterocyclic ring; or an optionally substituted bicyclic ring system; Ar¹ and Ar² each independently represent an optionally substituted phenyl ring or an optionally substituted 5- or 6- membered aromatic heterocyclic ring; Y represents a bond or various linking groups; r and s independently represent an integer from zero to 3 such that the sum of r and s is equal to an integer from 1 to 4; and V is a bond, O or S. These compounds were found to exhibit affinity for dopamine D₃ receptor and are disclosed as being useful in the treatment of psychotic conditions, e.g. schizophrenia.

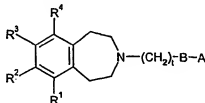
N-(Cyclohexylethyl)-tetrahydrobenzazepine compounds having affinity at the D₃ receptor are also disclosed in N.E. Austin *et al.*, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 2000, 10, 2553-2555.

- WO 01/23357 (Amgen) discloses benzazepine derivatives useful in the treatment of diseases, conditions or disorders mediated by integrin derivatives, for example atherosclerosis, restenosis, inflammation, cancer, osteoporosis and the like. There appears to be no disclosure that these compounds have affinity for dopamine D₃ receptors or could be used in the treatment of psychotic conditions.

20 Summary of the Invention

- We have now found a novel class of tetrahydrobenzazepine derivatives which have affinity for dopamine receptors, in particular the dopamine D₃ receptor. These derivatives thus have potential in the treatment of conditions wherein modulation, especially antagonism/inhibition, of the D₃ receptor is beneficial, e.g. as antipsychotic agents.

In a first aspect the present invention provides a compound of formula (I):



Formula (I)

- 30 wherein:

R² and R³ independently represent:

- a hydrogen or halogen atom; a hydroxy, cyano, nitro, oxime, C₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₄alkoxy, arylC₁₋₄alkoxy, C₁₋₄alkylthio, C₁₋₄alkoxycarbonyl, C₁₋₄alkylsulfonyl, C₃₋₆cycloalkylC₁₋₄alkoxy, C₁₋₄alkanoyl, C₁₋₄alkoxycarbonyl, C₁₋₄alkylsulfonyl, C₁₋₄alkylsulfonyloxy, C₁₋₄alkylsulfonylC₁₋₄alkyl, arylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyloxy,

arylsulfonylC₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₄alkylsulfonamido, C₁₋₄alkylamido, C₁₋₄alkylsulfonamidoC₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₄alkylamidoC₁₋₄alkyl, arylsulfonamido, arylcarboxamido, arylsulfonamidoC₁₋₄alkyl, arylcarboxamidoC₁₋₄alkyl, aroyl, aroylC₁₋₄alkyl, or aroylC₁₋₄alkanoyl group;

- 5 a group R⁵OCO(CH₂)_p, R⁵CON(R⁶)(CH₂)_p, R⁵R⁶NCO(CH₂)_p or R⁵R⁶NSO₂(CH₂)_p, in which p represents zero or an integer from 1 to 4, and (for all four groups) each of R⁵ and R⁶ independently represents a hydrogen atom or a C₁₋₄alkyl group, or (in groups R⁵CON(R⁶)(CH₂)_p, R⁵R⁶NCO(CH₂)_p and R⁵R⁶NSO₂(CH₂)_p) R⁵CONR⁶ or R⁵R⁶N together form a 4-, 5-, 6- or 7-membered azacyclic group optionally containing one additional O, N or S atom in the azacycle and having 3-8 carbon atoms (including the carbon atoms contained in any optional substituent(s) of the azacycle); or
- 10 a group Ar³-Z, wherein Ar³ represents an optionally substituted phenyl ring or an optionally substituted 5- or 6- membered aromatic heterocyclic ring and Z represents a bond, O, S, SO₂ or CH₂;

- 15 R¹ and R⁴ independently represent H, F, Cl, Br, C₁₋₂alkyl, C₁alkoxy, OH, CN, or NO₂;

B represents a sulfur atom or a -CH₂- group;

t represents 3 or 4; and

- 20 A represents an optionally substituted 5- or 6- membered aromatic heterocyclic ring, or an optionally substituted bicyclic heterocyclic ring system in which at least the ring bound to the group B in Formula (I) is aromatic;

or a salt thereof.

- 25 In the compounds of formula (I) above an "alkyl" group or moiety may be straight or branched, and includes alkyl groups with one, two, three or more fluorine substituents. Alkyl groups which may be employed include methyl, trifluoromethyl, ethyl, pentafluoroethyl, n-propyl, n-butyl, n-pentyl, n-hexyl and any branched isomers thereof such as isopropyl, t-butyl, sec-butyl, isobutyl, and the like.

- A corresponding meaning, including optional fluorine substituents, is intended for "alkoxy", "alkylene", and like terms derived from alkyl. For example, "alkoxy" includes methoxy, trifluoromethoxy, ethoxy, and oxy derivatives of the alkyls listed above. "Alkylsulfonyl" such as C₁₋₄alkylsulfonyl includes methylsulfonyl (methanesulfonyl), ethylsulfonyl, trifluoromethanesulfonyl, pentafluoroethylsulfonyl, and others derived from the alkyls listed above. "Alkylsulfonyloxy" such as C₁₋₄alkylsulfonyloxy includes methanesulfonyloxy (methylsulfonyloxy), trifluoromethanesulfonyloxy, ethanesulfonyloxy, pentafluoroethanesulfonyloxy *et al.*
- 35

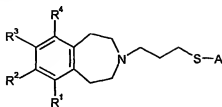
- "Cycloalkyl", for example C₃₋₆cycloalkyl, includes cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl and cyclohexyl, and the like.
- 40

A halogen atom present in the compounds of formula (I) may be fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine.

Preferably, B represents a sulfur atom.

Preferably, t represents 3.

More preferably, B is a sulfur atom and t is 3 and the invention is a compound of formula (IA) or a salt thereof:



Formula (IA)

5

Preferably, A represents an optionally substituted 5- or 6- membered aromatic heterocyclic ring, or an optionally substituted bicyclic heterocyclic aromatic ring system (i.e. both rings of the optionally substituted bicyclic heterocyclic ring system are aromatic). It is preferred that A represents an optionally substituted 5- or 6- membered aromatic heterocyclic ring, and more preferred that A is an optionally substituted 5-membered aromatic heterocyclic ring.

10

It is preferred that A is selected from one of the groups (i), (ii) or (iii):



(i)



(ii)



(iii)

15

wherein:

X¹ and X² are independently N or CR⁸, and X³ is NR⁸, O or S;

Y¹ and Y³ are independently N or CR⁹, and Y² is NR⁹, O or S;

20 Z¹ is NR¹⁰, O or S, and Z² and Z³ are independently N or CR¹⁰;

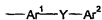
and wherein:

R⁷ is H, a halogen atom, OH, cyano, nitro, C₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₄alkoxy, C₁₋₄alkylenedioxy, C₁₋₄alkanoyl, or C₁₋₄alkylsulfonyl, an optionally substituted 3-, 4-, 5- or 6-membered cycloalkyl ring, or a group of the formula (a), (b), (c) or (d):

25



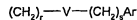
(a)



(b)



(c)



(d)

in which:

Ar represents an optionally substituted phenyl ring or an optionally substituted 5- or 6- membered aromatic heterocyclic ring; or an optionally substituted bicyclic ring system,

30

Ar¹ and Ar² each independently represent an optionally substituted phenyl ring or an optionally substituted 5- or 6- membered aromatic heterocyclic ring, and Y represents

a bond, -NHCO-, -CONH-, -CH₂-, or -(CH₂)_mY^A(CH₂)_n-, wherein Y^A represents O, S, SO₂, or CO and m and n each represent zero or 1 such that the sum of m+n is zero or 1,

r and s independently represent an integer from zero to 3 such that the sum of r and s is equal to an integer from 1 to 4, and V represents a bond, O or S; and

5 R⁹ is H, a halogen atom, OH, cyano, nitro, C₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₄alkoxy, C₁₋₄alkylenedioxy, C₁₋₄alkanoyl, or C₁₋₄alkylsulfonyl, an optionally substituted 3-, 4-, 5- or 6-membered cycloalkyl ring, or a group of the formula (a), (b), (c) or (d) as defined herein, provided that R⁹ is not a halogen atom, OH, cyano, nitro, C₁₋₄alkoxy or C₁₋₄alkylenedioxy when R⁹ is linked to N;

10 or R⁹ together with R⁷ and the intervening atoms of the 5-membered heterocyclic ring illustrated in groups (i), (ii) or (iii) form part of an optionally substituted 5-, 6-, or 7-membered carbocyclic or heterocyclic ring; and wherein:

15 R⁸ is H, OH or C₁₋₂alkyl, provided that R⁸ is H or C₁₋₂alkyl when R⁸ is linked to N;

R¹⁰ is H, OH, C₁₋₆alkyl, hydroxy-substituted C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₂alkoxy-C₁₋₄alkyl, phenyl-C₁₋₄alkyl, a 3-, 4-, 5- or 6-membered cycloalkyl ring, or phenyl; wherein in phenyl, phenyl-C₁₋₄alkyl or cycloalkyl the ring is optionally substituted by one or two fluoro or C₁alkyl groups; and provided that R¹⁰ is not OH when R¹⁰ is linked to N.

20

Note that in groups (i), (ii) and (iii) the pendant bond at the left-hand side of each group indicates that there is a direct bond between the group B of Formula (I) and the heterocycle carbon atom located between X^{1,2,3} and Z^{1,2,3}.

25

In any groups of the formula (a), (b), (c) or (d), the rings or ring systems Ar, Ar¹ or Ar² are preferably each independently optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from: a halogen atom, or a hydroxy, oxo, cyano, nitro, C₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₄alkoxy, C₁₋₄alkylenedioxy, C₁₋₄alkanoyl, C₁₋₄alkylsulfonyl, C₁₋₄alkylsulfonyloxy, C₁₋₄alkylsulfanyl, C₁₋₄alkylthio, R¹³SO₂N(R¹⁴)-, R¹³R¹⁴NSO₂-, R¹³R¹⁴N-, 30 R¹³R¹⁴NCO-, or R¹³CON(R¹⁴)- group wherein each of R¹³ and R¹⁴ independently represents a hydrogen atom or a C₁₋₄ alkyl group, or R¹³R¹⁴ together form a C₃₋₆ alkylene chain.

35

Alternatively or additionally, Ar and Ar² may be independently optionally substituted by one or more 5- or 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic rings, e.g. as defined below, optionally substituted by a C₁₋₂ alkyl or R¹³R¹⁴N- group; wherein R¹³ and R¹⁴ are as defined above.

40

In the rings Ar and Ar² substituents positioned *ortho* to one another may be linked to form a 5- or 6- membered ring. Preferably in this case Ar and Ar² are optionally substituted phenyl rings, and here linking two *ortho* substituents can for example form a benzoxazinone ring system.

It is preferred that the rings Ar, Ar¹, or Ar² are each independently unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents selected from: a halogen atom, or a cyano, C₁₋₂alkyl (e.g. methyl or trifluoromethyl), C₁₋₂alkoxy (e.g. methoxy or trifluoromethoxy), C₁₋₂alkylenedioxy (e.g. methylenedioxy), C₂₋₃alkanoyl (e.g. acetyl), C₂alkanoylamino

(e.g. acetylamino), C₁alkylsulfonyl (e.g. methylsulfonyl or trifluoromethylsulfonyl), C₁alkylsulfonyloxy (e.g. methylsulfonyloxy), C₁alkylaminosulfonyl (e.g. methylaminosulfonyl), C₁alkylsulfonylamino (e.g. methylsulfonylamino), or C₁alkylaminocarbonyl (e.g. methylaminocarbonyl) group.

- 5 The 3-, 4-, 5- or 6-membered cycloalkyl ring in e.g. R⁷, R⁹, and (later) R¹¹ can, unless stated otherwise, be independently optionally substituted by one or two F or C₁-2 alkyl groups or a R¹⁵R¹⁶N- group; wherein each of R¹⁵ and R¹⁶ independently represents a hydrogen atom or a C₁₋₄ alkyl group, or R¹⁵R¹⁶ together form a C₃₋₆ alkylene chain.

10

Preferably, R⁷ is not H. It is advantageous that R⁷ is a group of the formula (a), (b), (c) or (d). It is thought that these R⁷ aryl-containing groups help to increase the compound's affinity (binding) to the dopamine D₃ receptor. More advantageously, R⁷ is a group of the formula (a), (b) or (c). Still more advantageously, R⁷ is a group of the

15

formula (a) or (b). It is preferred that when R⁷ represents a group of formula (a) or (b), and Ar or Ar¹ is optionally substituted phenyl, there is either no substituent present in Ar or Ar¹ *para* to the 5-membered heterocycle illustrated in group (i), (ii) or (iii) or such *para* substituent is a either fluoro or C₁alkyl (e.g. CF₃) group. A fluoro or no substituent at such *para*

20

position is preferred. R⁷ being an optionally substituted 3-, 4-, 5- or 6-membered cycloalkyl ring, such as an optionally substituted cyclohexyl ring, is also advantageous.

25

Preferably, R⁹ is *not* taken together with R⁷ and the intervening ring atoms to form part of an optionally substituted 5-, 6-, or 7-membered carbocyclic or heterocyclic ring. More preferably, R⁹ is H or a group of the formula (a) as defined herein, still more preferably H or optionally substituted phenyl.

30

When R⁷ and/or R⁹, especially R⁷, is/are a group of formula (a), Ar is preferably optionally substituted phenyl, quinolinyl e.g. 2-, 3-, 4-, 5- or 6-quinolinyl, furyl e.g. 2-furyl, thienyl e.g. 2-thienyl, pyridyl e.g. 4-pyridyl, indolyl, pyrazolopyrimidyl e.g. pyrazolo[1,5-a]pyrimidyl, cinnolinyl, benzo[b]furanyl or pyrrolopyridyl. More preferably, R⁷ is optionally substituted phenyl in particular unsubstituted phenyl or fluorophenyl (e.g. 4-fluorophenyl), or optionally substituted quinolinyl e.g. 6-quinolinyl.

35

When R⁷ and/or R⁹, especially R⁷, is/are a group of formula (b), Ar¹ is preferably optionally substituted phenyl, and/or Y is preferably a bond, and/or Ar² is preferably optionally substituted phenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, or a 5-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring containing at least one N and one O atom e.g. isoxazolyl, oxazolyl or oxadiazolyl. A highly preferred embodiment is wherein Ar¹ is optionally substituted phenyl (preferably phenyl), Y is a bond, and Ar² is optionally substituted phenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, isoxazolyl, oxazolyl or oxadiazolyl. Most preferably, Ar² is optionally substituted isoxazolyl e.g. isoxazol-5-yl (i.e. 1,2-oxazol-5-yl), oxazolyl e.g. 1,3-oxazol-2-yl, or oxadiazolyl e.g. 1,2,4-oxadiazol-3-yl.

40

Optimally Ar² has no substituents or is substituted by a C₁alkyl e.g. methyl group, this optional substituent preferably being situated two Ar²-ring-atoms from the connection point to the Ar¹-Y- e.g. Ar¹- group. For example Ar² being 5-methyl-1,2,4-

oxadiazol-3-yl (see e.g. Example 30), 5-methyl-1,3-oxazol-2-yl or 4-methyl-1,3-oxazol-2-yl is preferred.

- 5 For a group of formula (b), Ar²-Y- is advantageously joined to the atom of the Ar¹ ring two atoms removed from the Ar¹ atom connected to the main A ring. So, for example, where Ar¹ is optionally substituted phenyl, Ar²-Y- is preferably joined to the *meta*-position of the phenyl ring relative to the main (e.g. triazolyl, imidazolyl) A ring. See for example Example 30 hereinafter.

When R⁷ and/or R⁹, especially R⁷, is/are a group of formula (c), preferred examples of Ar include optionally substituted phenyl.

- 10 When R⁷ and/or R⁹, especially R⁷, is/are a group of formula (d), preferably r is 1 or 2, V is a bond, and S is zero; i.e. group (d) is -(CH₂)_r-Ar where r is 1 or 2.

- Where R⁹ together with R⁷ and the intervening atoms of the 5-membered heterocyclic ring illustrated in groups (i), (ii) or (iii) form part of an optionally substituted 5-, 6-, or 7-membered carbocyclic or heterocyclic ring, the latter ring is preferably a 6-membered ring, more preferably a phenyl ring (e.g. see Examples 18 and 23).

- 15 R¹⁰ is preferably H, C₁₋₄alkyl or cyclopropyl, more preferably H or C₁alkyl (e.g. methyl or trifluoromethyl).

Preferably, X¹ and X² are independently N or CR⁸, and X³ is NR⁸. More preferably, X¹ and X² are independently N and X³ is NR⁸.

- 20 Preferably, Y¹ and Y³ are independently N or CR⁹, and Y² is NR⁹.

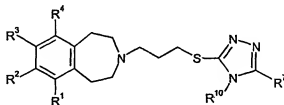
Preferably, Z¹ is NR¹⁰, and Z² and Z³ are independently N.

For A, the tautomeric form shown in group (i) is preferred. In group (i), it is preferred that one or both of X¹ and Y¹ is N.

- 25 Without intending to be limited by theory, it is thought that one or both of X¹/X²/X³ and Y¹/Y²/Y³ advantageously are or contain a ring heteroatom, ideally a N atom, for optimum D₃ binding.

It is preferred that A is group (i) and Z¹ = NR¹⁰, in which case R¹⁰ is preferably H, C₁₋₄alkyl or cyclopropyl.

- 30 More preferably, B is a sulfur atom, t is 3, A is group (i), X¹ = Y¹ = N and Z¹ is NR¹⁰, so that A is optionally substituted 1,2,4-triazol-3-yl and the invention is a compound of formula (IB) or a salt thereof:

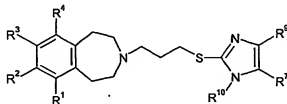


Formula (IB)

35

Preferably, R⁷ is a group of formula (a), in particular an optionally substituted bicyclic ring or an optionally substituted phenyl ring, more particularly, quinolinyl, e.g. 2-, 3-, 4-, 5-, or 6-quinolinyl.

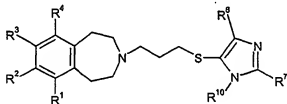
Also preferred is the embodiment wherein B is a sulfur atom, t is 3 and A is group (i), X^1 is N, Y^1 is CR^9 , and Z^1 is NR^{10} , so that the invention is a compound of formula (IC) or a salt thereof:



Formula (IC)

In Formula (IC) it is further preferred that R^9 is *not* taken together with R^7 and the intervening ring atoms to form part of an optionally substituted 5-, 6-, or 7-membered carbocyclic or heterocyclic ring. In this case, A is optionally substituted imidazol-2-yl. Preferably, R^7 is a group of formula (a), in particular an optionally substituted bicyclic ring or an optionally substituted phenyl ring, more particularly, quinolinyl, e.g. 2-, 3-, 4-, 5-, or 6-quinolinyl.

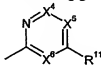
Also preferred is the embodiment wherein B is a sulfur atom, t is 3 and A is group (i), X^1 is CR^8 , Y^1 is N and Z^1 is NR^{10} , so that the invention is a compound of Formula (ID) or a salt thereof:



Formula (ID)

In Formula (ID), A is optionally substituted imidazol-4-yl or -5-yl, and preferably R^8 is H. Preferably, R^7 is a group of formula (a), in particular an optionally substituted bicyclic ring or an optionally substituted phenyl ring, more particularly, quinolinyl, e.g. 2-, 3-, 4-, 5-, or 6-quinolinyl.

Another embodiment is where A is the following group (iv):



(iv)

where R^{11} has the same (essential and preferable) definitions as R^7 herein (but including H in the definitions where H is excluded from R^7); X^4 is CR^{12a} or N, X^5 is CR^{12b} or N, and X^6 is CR^{12c} or N provided that both X^4 and X^5 are not N; and wherein

12a,b,c, independently of each other, are as defined for the optional substituents of group A described below (i.e. including H as a possibility); and/or wherein either (a) X⁴ and X⁵, or (b) X⁵, R¹¹ and the intervening carbon atom, or (c) X⁶, R¹¹ and the intervening carbon atom, together form part of an optionally substituted 5-, 6-, or 7-membered carbocyclic or heterocyclic ring (e.g. as preferably defined for groups (i), (ii) and (iii) above for when R⁷ and R⁹ together form a ring).

Preferably, R¹¹ has the same definition(s) as R⁷ herein (but including H in the definitions where H is excluded from R⁷); X⁴ is CR^{12a} or N, X⁵ is CR^{12b} or N, and X⁶ is CR^{12c} or N provided that both X⁴ and X⁵ are not N; and wherein R^{12a,b,c}, independently of each other, are as defined for the optional substituents of group A described below (i.e. including H as a possibility) – i.e. there is no extra optionally substituted 5-, 6-, or 7-membered carbocyclic or heterocyclic ring fused to group (iv) above.

Preferably, X⁶ is N, and/or R¹¹ is H or C₁₋₄alkyl (e.g. CF₃).

The following features are preferred or optional for any of the compounds of Formulae (I), (IA), (IB), (IC) or (ID) or salts thereof.

An optionally substituted 5- or 6-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring, as defined for any of the groups A, Ar, Ar¹, Ar² or Ar³ may contain from 1 to 4 heteroatoms, preferably from 1 to 3 heteroatoms, selected from O, N and S. When the ring contains 2-4 heteroatoms, one is preferably selected from O, N and S and the remaining heteroatoms are preferably N. Examples of 5 and 6-membered heterocyclic groups include furyl, thienyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, imidazolyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridyl, triazolyl, triazinyl, pyridazyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazolyl, isothiazolyl, and isoxazolyl. For group A, preferred examples include triazolyl (especially 1,2,4-triazol-3-yl) and imidazolyl (especially imidazol-2-yl). For group Ar, preferred examples include furyl e.g. 2-furyl, thienyl e.g. 2-thienyl, and pyridyl e.g. 4-pyridyl.

Examples of bicyclic ring systems for the group A include bicyclic heteroaromatic ring systems, such as indazolyl, indolyl, benzofuranyl, benzothienyl, benzothiazolyl, benzimidazolyl e.g. benzimidazol-2-yl, benzoxazolyl e.g. benzoxazol-2-yl, benzisoxazolyl, benzisothiazolyl, quinolinyl, quinoxolinyl, quinazolinyl, cinnolinyl, or isoquinolinyl.

Examples of bicyclic ring systems for Ar (e.g. in groups R⁷, R⁹, etc. in groups (i), (ii) or (iii)) include bicyclic aromatic, e.g. bicyclic heteroaromatic, ring systems such as: naphthyl e.g. 2-naphthyl, indazolyl, indolyl, benzofuranyl, benzothienyl, benzothiazolyl, benzimidazolyl e.g. benzimidazol-2-yl, benzoxazolyl e.g. benzoxazol-2-yl, benzisoxazolyl, benzisothiazolyl, quinolinyl e.g. 2-, 3-, 4-, 5- or 6-quinolinyl, quinoxolinyl, quinazolinyl, cinnolinyl, isoquinolinyl, naphthyridinyl, pyrazolopyrimidyl e.g. pyrazolo[1,5-a]pyrimidyl, pyrrolopyridyl e.g. pyrrolo[3,2-b]pyridyl or pyrrolo[3,2-c]pyridyl, thienothiophenyl e.g. thieno[3,2-b]thiophenyl, 1,2-dihydro-2-oxo-quinolinyl, 3,4-dihydro-3-oxo-2H-benzoxazinyl, or 1,2-dihydro-2-oxo-3H-indolyl. Preferred examples include quinolinyl, e.g. 2-, 3-, 4-, 5- or 6-quinolinyl or thienopyridine.

The groups/rings/ring systems A or Ar³ may each independently be optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from: a halogen atom, or a hydroxy, oxo, cyano, nitro, C₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₄alkoxy, C₁₋₄alkylenedioxy, C₁₋₄alkanoyl, or C₁₋₄alkylsulfonyl group.

- 5 Alternatively, the ring/ring system A may be optionally substituted by one or more groups of the formula (a), (b), (c), or (d) as defined herein; and/or by one or more non-aromatic 3-, 4-, 5-, 6-, or 7-membered heterocyclic or carbocyclic rings optionally substituted by one or two F or C₁₋₂ alkyl groups or a R¹⁵R¹⁶N- group; wherein each of R¹⁵ and R¹⁶ independently represents a hydrogen atom or a C₁₋₄ alkyl group, or
10 R¹⁵R¹⁶ together form a C₃₋₆ alkylene chain.

In the group A substituents positioned *ortho* to one another may be linked to form a 5- or 6- membered ring.

- It is preferred that the groups A or Ar³ are each independently optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from: a halogen atom, or a cyano, C₁₋₂alkyl (e.g. methyl or trifluoromethyl), C₁₋₂alkoxy (e.g. methoxy), C₁₋₂alkylenedioxy (e.g. methylenedioxy), C₂₋₃alkanoyl (e.g. acetyl), C₂alkanoylamino (e.g. acetylamino), or C₁alkylsulfonyl (e.g. methylsulfonyl or trifluoromethylsulfonyl) group. It is more preferred that Ar³ is optionally substituted by a C₁alkyl (e.g. methyl) group.

- 20 When R² and/or R³ represents an arylC₁₋₄alkoxy, arylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyloxy, arylsulfonylC₁₋₄alkyl, arylsulfonamido, arylcarboxamido, arylsulfonamidoC₁₋₄alkyl, arylcarboxamidoC₁₋₄alkyl, aroyl, aroylC₁₋₄alkyl, or arylC₁₋₄alkanoyl group, the aryl moiety may be selected from an optionally substituted phenyl ring or an optionally substituted 5- or 6-membered heterocyclic ring. In the group R² and/or R³ an aryl moiety
25 may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from hydrogen, halogen, amino, cyano, C₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₄alkylamino, C₁₋₄dialkylamino, C₁₋₄alkylamido, C₁₋₄alkanoyl, or R¹⁷R¹⁸NCO where each of R¹⁷ and R¹⁸ independently represents a hydrogen atom or C₁₋₄alkyl group.

- Where R² and/or R³ independently represent the group R⁵CON(R⁶)(CH₂)_p,
30 R⁵R⁶NCO(CH₂)_p or R⁵R⁶NSO₂(CH₂)_p in which R⁵CONR⁶ or R⁵R⁶N together form a 4-, 5-, 6- or 7-membered azacyclic group, then this can be characterised by: (i) containing one additional O, N or S atom in the azacycle, for example the azacyclic group being 1,4-morpholin-4-yl and/or (ii) having 1-2 optional C₁₋₂alkyl substituents whose carbon atoms are included in the azacyclic group's 3-8 carbon atoms. One, two or more F atoms can
35 optionally be included as substituents of the carbon atoms of the heterocycle. The term 'azacyclic group' should be interpreted to cover only stable azacycles such as 1,4-morpholine and piperazine and not for example 1,3-morpholine. Saturated azacycles, in particular piperidiny, pyrrolidiny, 1,4-morpholiny, and including the corresponding α-oxo-azacycles R⁵CONR⁶, are preferred.

- 40 The substituents R² and R³ may be the same or different. Preferably, R² is other than hydrogen.

It is preferred that R² represents a substituent selected from: a halogen atom, cyano, acetyl, trifluoromethyl, pentafluoroethyl, trifluoromethoxy, C₁₋₄alkylsulfonyl, C₁₋₄alkylsulfonyloxy, a R⁵R⁶NSO₂ group where each of R⁵ and R⁶ independently

represents a hydrogen atom or a C_{1-4} alkyl group, or R^5R^6N together form a 4-, 5-, 6- or 7-membered azacyclic group optionally containing one additional O, N or S atom in the azacycle and having 3-8 carbon atoms; or a group Ar^3Z , where Z is a bond and Ar^3 is an optionally substituted 5- or 6-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring.

- 5 More preferably, R^2 represents a substituent selected from: C_{1-4} alkylsulfonyl (e.g. methylsulfonyl, trifluoromethylsulfonyl, or ethylsulfonyl), C_{1-4} alkylsulfonyloxy (e.g. methylsulfonyloxy or trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy); a $R^5R^6NSO_2$ group where each of R^5 and R^6 independently represents a hydrogen atom or a C_{1-4} alkyl group (e.g. a N,N -dimethylaminosulfonyl group), or R^5R^6N together form a 4-, 5-, 6- or 7-membered
10 azacyclic group optionally containing one additional O, N or S atom in the azacycle and having 3-8 carbon atoms (e.g. a piperidin-1-ylsulfonyl, pyrrolidin-1-ylsulfonyl or 1,4-morpholin-4-ylsulfonyl group); or a group Ar^3Z , where Z is a bond and Ar^3 is an optionally substituted 5- or 6-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring.

- Still more preferably, R^2 represents a methylsulfonyl, ethylsulfonyl, N,N -
15 dimethylaminosulfonyl, pyrrolidin-1-ylsulfonyl, 1,4-morpholin-4-ylsulfonyl or methylsulfonyloxy group, or R^2 represents a pyrazin-2-yl, 5-methyl-oxazol-2-yl or 5-methyl-isoxazol-3-yl group.

Preferably, R^3 is hydrogen or one of the substituents preferred for R^2 . More preferably, R^3 is hydrogen.

- 20 It is preferred that at least one of R^1 and R^4 is H, more preferred that both R^1 and R^4 are H, and most preferred that R^1 , R^3 , and R^4 are all H.

- It will be appreciated that for use in medicine the salts of the compounds of the invention should be pharmaceutically (i.e. physiologically) acceptable. Suitable
25 pharmaceutically acceptable salts will be apparent to those skilled in the art and include for example acid addition salts formed with inorganic acids e.g. hydrochloric, hydrobromic, sulfuric, nitric or phosphoric acid; and organic acids e.g. succinic, maleic, acetic, fumaric, citric, tartaric, benzoic, p-toluenesulfonic, methanesulfonic or naphthalenesulfonic acid. Other non-pharmaceutically acceptable salts e.g. oxalates, may
30 be used, for example in the isolation of compounds of the invention and are included within the scope of this invention. Also included within the scope of the invention are solvates, hydrates, complexes and prodrugs of compounds of the invention.

- Certain of the compounds of the invention may form acid addition salts with one or more equivalents of the acid. The present invention includes within its scope all
35 possible stoichiometric and non-stoichiometric forms. Certain groups/substituents included in the present invention may be present as isomers. The present invention includes within its scope all such isomers, including racemates, enantiomers and mixtures thereof. When A represents a group (c) the compounds may also exist as geometric isomers around the double bond; all isomers are included though
40 *trans* geometry of the double bond in (c) is preferred.

Preferred compounds have a molecular weight of 800 or less. Still more preferred are compounds having a molecular weight of 600 or less. Generally, and without being limited thereto, such compounds may have higher oral bioavailability, and sometimes

higher solubility and/or brain penetrancy. Molecular weight here refers to that of the unsolvated free base compound, excluding any molecular weight contributed by addition salts, solvent (e.g. water) molecules, prodrug molecular parts cleaved off *in vivo*, etc.

- 5 Certain of the substituted heteroaromatic ring systems included in compounds of formula (I) may exist in one or more tautomeric forms. The present invention includes within its scope all such tautomeric forms, including mixtures. For example, where R⁷, R⁸, R⁹, and/or R¹⁰ is/are OH, in A groups (i), (ii) or (iii) above, the 5-membered ring can be in the keto or enol forms.

- 10 In general, the compounds or salts of the invention should be interpreted as excluding those compounds (if any) which are so chemically unstable, either per se or in water, that they are clearly unsuitable for pharmaceutical use through all administration routes, whether oral, parenteral or otherwise. Such compounds are known to the skilled chemist. Prodrugs or compounds which are stable *ex vivo* and which are convertible in the mammalian (e.g. human) body to the inventive compounds are however included.

- 15 Particular compounds and salts according to the invention include those specifically exemplified in Table 1 and Examples 173 to 177 and those specifically exemplified and named hereinafter, for example:-

- 20 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-phenyl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
3-[3-(4-Methyl-5-phenyl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine-7-carbonitrile;
7-(5-Methyl-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-3-yl)-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-phenyl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
25 7-Methylsulfonyl-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-phenyl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
7-Methylsulfonyl-3-[3-(4,5-diphenyl-1H-imidazol-2-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
30 7-Methylsulfonyl-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(quinolin-6-yl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(furan-2-yl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(thiophen-2-yl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
35 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(pyridin-4-yl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(4-*tert*-butyl-phenyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
40 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(5-methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(2,4-dichloro-phenyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;

- Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(quinolin-6-yl)-4*H*-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]azepin-7-yl ester;
- Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-4*H*-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]azepin-7-yl ester;
- 5 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(4-trifluoromethyl-phenyl)-4*H*-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]azepin-7-yl ester;
- Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(4-chloro-phenyl)-4*H*-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]azepin-7-yl ester;
- 10 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(5-phenyl-[1,3,4]oxadiazol-2-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]azepin-7-yl ester;
- Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(5-(pyridin-4-yl)-[1,3,4]oxadiazol-2-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]azepin-7-yl ester;
- Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(benzoxazol-2-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]azepin-7-yl ester;
- 15 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-4*H*-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]azepin-7-yl ester;
- Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(1-methyl-1*H*-imidazol-2-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]azepin-7-yl ester;
- 20 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(2,5-dimethyl-furan-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]azepin-7-yl ester;
- Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4,5-diphenyl-1*H*-imidazol-2-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]azepin-7-yl ester;
- Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]azepin-7-yl ester;
- 25 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(pyridin-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]azepin-7-yl ester;
- Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(pyrimidin-2-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]azepin-7-yl ester;
- Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(isoquinolin-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]azepin-7-yl ester;
- 30 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-trifluoromethyl-pyrimidin-2-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]azepin-7-yl ester;
- Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-phenyl-pyrimidin-2-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]azepin-7-yl ester;
- 35 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(5-phenyl-pyridazin-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]azepin-7-yl ester;
- Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-((5-methyl)-1,2,4-oxadiazol-3-yl)phenyl)-4*H*-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]azepin-7-yl ester;
- Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(3-cyanophenyl)-4*H*-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]azepin-7-yl ester; or
- 40 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-((2-methyl)-quinolin-5-yl)-4*H*-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]azepin-7-yl ester;

or a salt thereof.

Further particular compounds and salts according to the invention include:-

- 5 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(quinolin-3-yl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
- Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(3-trifluoromethyl-phenyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
- 10 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(3-methyl-4-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-3H-imidazol-2-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
- Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(3-methyl-4,5-diphenyl-3H-imidazol-2-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
- Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(2-fluoro-phenyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
- 15 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(3-fluoro-phenyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
- Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(3,4-difluoro-phenyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
- Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(cyclohexyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
- 20 7-Methylsulfonyl-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
- 7-Methylsulfonyl-3-[3-(4-phenyl)-thiazol-2-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
- 7-Methylsulfonyl-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(2-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-vinyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
- 25 7-Ethylsulfonyl-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
- 7-Ethylsulfonyl-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(quinolin-6-yl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
- 30 7-Ethylsulfonyl-3-[3-(3-methyl-2-phenyl-3H-imidazol-4-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
- 7-(Pyrrolidine-1-sulfonyl)-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
- 7-(Pyrrolidine-1-sulfonyl)-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(quinolin-6-yl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
- 35 7-(Pyrrolidine-1-sulfonyl)-3-[3-(4,5-diphenyl-1H-imidazol-2-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
- 7-(Morpholine-4-sulfonyl)-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
- 40 7-(Morpholine-4-sulfonyl)-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(quinolin-6-yl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
- 7-Pyrazin-2-yl-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;

- 7-Pyrazin-2-yl-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(quinolin-6-yl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
 3-[3-(4-Methyl-5-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine-7-sulfonic acid dimethylamide;
 5 3-[3-(4-Methyl-5-(quinolin-6-yl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine-7-sulfonic acid dimethylamide;
 7-Methylsulfonyl-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(quinolin-4-yl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
 7-Ethylsulfonyl-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(3-(5-methyl)-1,2,4-oxadiazol-3-yl)phenyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
 10 7-Ethylsulfonyl-3-[3-(4-Methyl-5-(2-methyl)-quinolin-5-yl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
 7-Ethylsulfonyl-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(2-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-vinyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
 15 7-(5-Methyl-oxazol-2-yl)-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
 7-(5-Methyl-oxazol-2-yl)-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(quinolin-6-yl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
 20 7-(5-Methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
 7-(5-Methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(quinolin-6-yl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
 7-(5-Methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-3-[4-(4-methyl-5-(2-methyl-quinolin-6-yl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-yl)-butyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
 25 3-[4-[5-(4-Fluoro-phenyl)-4-methyl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-yl]-butyl]-7-(5-methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
 7-Ethanesulfonyl-3-[4-(4-methyl-5-quinolin-6-yl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-butyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
 7-(5-Methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-3-[4-(4-methyl-5-quinolin-6-yl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-butyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine; or
 30 7-(3-Methyl-isoxazol-5-yl)-3-[4-(4-methyl-5-quinolin-6-yl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-butyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine

or a salt thereof.

35

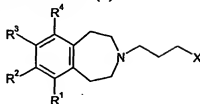
Note that in the above compound names, morpholine refers to 1,4-morpholine.

These compounds may for example be in the form of their free base or pharmaceutically (i.e. physiologically) acceptable salts thereof.

40

The present invention also provides a process for preparing a compound of formula (I) or a salt thereof wherein B is a sulfur atom and t is 3, i.e. a compound of formula (IA), which process comprises:

(a) reacting a compound of formula (II):



Formula (II)

- 5 wherein R^1 to R^4 are as herein defined and X is a leaving group; with a compound of formula (III):

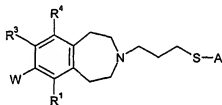
A-SH

10

Formula (III)

wherein A is as herein defined ; or

- (b) to prepare a compound of formula (IA) wherein R^2 is Ar^3-Z and Z is a bond,
 15 reacting a compound of formula (IV):

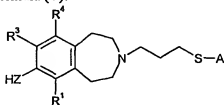


Formula (IV)

- wherein R^1 , R^3 , R^4 , and A are as herein defined and W is a halogen atom or a
 20 trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy group, or W is a group M selected from a boron derivative
 (e.g. a boronic acid function $B(OH)_2$) or a metal function such as trialkylstannyl (e.g.
 $SnBu_3$), zinc halide or magnesium halide;

- with a compound Ar^3-W^1 , wherein W^1 is a halogen atom or a
 25 trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy group when W is a group M or W^1 is a group M as defined
 above when W is a halogen atom or a trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy group; or

- (c) to prepare a compound of formula (IA) wherein R^3 is Ar^3-Z and Z is O or S,
 reacting a compound of formula (V):



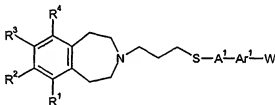
Formula (V)

30

wherein R^1 , R^3 , R^4 and A are as herein defined; with a reagent serving to introduce the group Ar^3 ; or

(d) interconverting one compound of formula (IA) to a different compound of formula (I) e.g. by:

- 5 (i) converting one or more of R^1 to R^4 from alkoxy (e.g. methoxy) to hydroxy,
- (ii) converting one or more of R^2 or R^3 from hydroxy to sulfonyloxy, such as alkylsulfonyloxy e.g. methanesulfonyloxy or trifluoromethanesulfonyloxy,
- (iii) converting a compound in which A is substituted by one or more groups of the formula (b) as herein defined wherein Y represents S to a compound wherein Y is SO_2 ;
- 10 (iv) converting Y from CO to CH_2 in a compound in which A is substituted by one or more groups of the formula (b); or
- (e) to prepare a compound of formula (IA) where A is substituted by one or more groups of the formula (b) as herein defined where Y is a bond, reacting a compound of formula (VI):

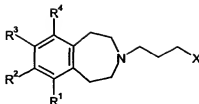


Formula (VI)

- wherein R^1 to R^4 and Ar^1 are as herein defined, W is as defined in (c) above, and A^1 is the same as herein defined for group A but has a substituent Ar^1-W (illustrated) instead
- 20 of one of the one or more substituents of formula (b) present in the product compound;
- with a compound Ar^2-W^1 , wherein W^1 is a halogen atom or a trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy group when W is a group M, or W^1 is a group M when W as defined in (c) above is a halogen atom or a trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy group;
- 25 and optionally thereafter forming a salt of formula (I).

- Process (a) may be effected using conventional methods for the formation of a thioether. The leaving group X can be a halogen atom such as chlorine. Alternatively X
- 30 can be a sulfonyloxy group such C_{1-4} alkylsulfonyloxy (e.g. methanesulfonyloxy or trifluoromethanesulfonyloxy); or Ar^4 -sulfonyloxy wherein Ar^4 is optionally substituted phenyl, an optionally substituted 5- or 6- membered aromatic heterocyclic ring, or an optionally substituted bicyclic ring system, preferably optionally substituted phenyl,
- wherein in each case the optional substituents are one or more C_{1-2} alkyl groups; e.g. *para*-toluenesulfonyloxy. When X is a halogen the reaction may be carried out using a
- 35 base such as lithium hydroxide in a solvent such as *N,N*-dimethylformamide.

The invention also provides a compound of formula (II):



Formula (II)

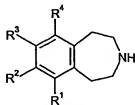
- wherein R^1 to R^4 are as herein defined, provided that R^1 to R^4 are not all H, and X is a leaving group. "Leaving group" is as understood by a skilled chemist, i.e. a group which can be displaced by a nucleophile in e.g. a S_N2 or S_N1 type reaction. X can be as hereinabove defined. Specific examples of interest are given in the Descriptions hereinafter.

- Reaction of a compound of formula (IV) with Ar^3-W^1 according to process (b), or a compound of formula (VI) with Ar^2-W^1 according to process (e), may be effected in the presence of a transition metal e.g., palladium catalyst such as *bis*-triphenylphosphinepalladium dichloride or *tetrakis*-triphenylphosphinepalladium (0). When M represents a boronic acid function such as $B(OH)_2$ the reaction may be carried out under basic conditions, for example using aqueous sodium carbonate in a suitable solvent such as dioxane. When M is trialkylstannyl the reaction may be carried out in an inert solvent, such as xylene or dioxane optionally in the presence of LiCl. When M is a zinc or magnesium halide the reaction may be effected in an aprotic solvent such as tetrahydrofuran. The substituent W is preferably a halogen atom such as bromine, or a sulfonyloxy group such as trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy; and W^1 is preferably a group M, such as trialkylstannyl or $B(OH)_2$.

- In process (c) the reagent serving to introduce the group Ar^3 is preferably a compound of formula Ar^3-Hal , wherein Hal is a halogen atom. The reaction may be effected in the presence of a base, such as potassium carbonate, in a solvent such as *N,N*-dimethylformamide.

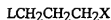
Interconversion reactions according to process (d) may be effected using methods well known in the art.

A compound of formula (II) may itself be prepared by reacting a compound of formula (VII):



Formula (VII)

- wherein R^1 to R^4 are as hereinbefore defined;
with a compound of formula (VIII):



Formula (VIII)

5

wherein X is as herein defined and L is a leaving group, e.g., a bromine atom. For typical reaction conditions, see Description 20 hereinafter.

Compounds A-SH of formula (III) may be prepared by methods well known in the art (many such thiols are commercially available). Where the compound of formula (III)



- 10 is HS-(1,2,4-triazolyl)-R⁷ (, used to make compounds of Formula (IA); R¹⁰ can for example be Me), this can be prepared from R⁷-CO₂H or the corresponding ester or acid chloride by standard methods. For example, reaction of R⁷CO₂Et with hydrazine, followed by treatment of the resulting hydrazide with R¹⁰-NCS (e.g. MeNCS) and cyclisation of the resulting R⁷CONHNHC(=S)NH-R¹⁰ under basic conditions gives the
- 15 desired triazoles. Alternatively, reaction of R⁷COCl with NH₂NHC(=S)NH-R¹⁰ in pyridine gives R⁷CONHNHC(=S)NH-R¹⁰ (*J. Het. Chem.*, 1995, 32, 183; R¹⁰ = Me).



Where the compound of formula (III) is an imidazole such as , used to make the compounds of Formula (IB), the compound may be prepared by conversion of a ketone R⁷COMe to R⁷COCH₂NH₂ by standard methods and reacting the aminoketone with MeNCS (or other R¹⁰-NCS) to give the desired imidazole (*Acta. Chem. Scand.*, 1969, 23, 2879). Where the compound of formula (III) is an imidazole such as



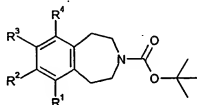
- 20 , used to make the compounds of Formula (IC), the compound may be prepared either by chlorosulfonation of the parent imidazole, followed by reduction of the ClSO₂- group to the HS- group (*J. Het. Chem.*, 1998, 35, 141), or by conversion of the corresponding imidazolone (*Tetrahedron*, 1989, 45, 6375) to the imidazolthione with for example P₂S₅ or Lawesson's reagent (*J. Med. Chem.*, 1993, 36, 3371).
- 25

Compounds of formula (IV), (V) or (VI) may be prepared by processes analogous to (a), (b), (c), (d) and (e) described above. Compounds Ar²W¹, Ar³W¹ and Ar³Hal are commercially available or may be prepared by standard methods.

30

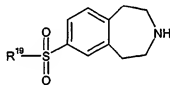
Compounds of formula (VII) where for example R¹, R², R³ or R⁴ is a halogen


- Conversion of a compound of formula (VII) where R^2 or R^3 is a cyano or acetyl group to a compound of formula (VII) where R^2 or R^3 is a group Ar^3Z , where Ar is an oxadiazole or an isoxazole ring and Z is a bond, may be carried out by (i) conversion of (VII) to a N-Boc protected compound of formula (IX), where R^1 to R^4 are as
- 5 hereinafter defined, using standard methods; (ii) conversion of R^2 or R^3 from cyano to oxadiazolyl using known methods, or conversion of acetyl to isoxazolyl using known methods; and (iii) deprotection of a compound of formula (IX) to a compound of formula (VII) using standard methods.




Formula (IX)

- Certain specific compounds of Formula (VII), which are used as intermediates in the synthesis of specific examples of compounds of Formula (I) disclosed herein, are
- 15 novel over the generalised disclosure in WO 00/21951. Hence, the present invention also provides a compound of Formula (X):



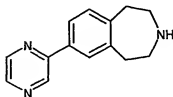
where R^{19} = ethyl, N,N-dimethylamino, pyrrolidin-1-yl (),

or 1,4-morpholin-4-yl ()

Formula (X)

- or a secondary-amine-protected derivative thereof, or a salt of the compound or derivative. These compounds can be made for example according to Descriptions 15a, 21-22, 21-22(a) and 21-22(b) hereinafter. Suitable secondary amine protecting groups which can be present in the protected derivatives are known to the skilled chemist and include alkyloxycarbonyl (e.g. *N-tert*-butoxycarbonyl, Boc) and alkanoyl (e.g. acetyl or trifluoroacetyl). The protected derivatives can be prepared using the standard protecting group chemistry on compound (X); for example by using the methods of Descriptions 3 (for Boc protection) or 12 (for acetyl protection) or by changing the protecting group used in the Descriptions (for other protecting groups).
- 25
- 30

The present invention also provides a compound of Formula (XI):



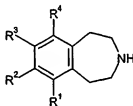
Formula (XI)

5

or a secondary-amine-protected derivative thereof, or a salt of the compound or derivative. These pyrazine-2-yl compounds and derivatives can be prepared for example by the methods of Descriptions 27 and 28.

- 10 The present invention also provides a process for preparing a compound of formula (I) or a salt thereof, which process comprises:

(a) reacting a compound of formula (VII):



Formula (VII)

with a compounds of formula (XII):

15



Formula (XII)

- wherein R¹ to R⁴, t, B and A are as herein defined. The reaction of a compound of Formula (VII) with a compound of Formula (XII) is carried out by a reductive amination by standard methods known to those skilled in the art, for example by the use of sodium triacetoxyborohydride in a solvent such as 1,2-dichloroethane. The aldehydes of Formula (XII) may be prepared by methods known in the art, for example by the procedure described herein for Examples 173 (parts a-f) and Example 175 (parts a and b).

25

- Compounds of formula (I) have been found to exhibit affinity for dopamine receptors, in particular the D₃ receptor, and are expected to be useful in the treatment of disease states which require modulation of such receptors, such as psychotic conditions. Many of the compounds of formula (I) have also been found to have greater affinity for dopamine D₃ than for D₂ receptors. The therapeutic effect of currently available antipsychotic agents (neuroleptics) is generally believed to be exerted via blockade of D₂ receptors; however this mechanism is also thought to be responsible for undesirable extrapyramidal side effects (eps) associated with many neuroleptic agents. Without wishing to be bound by theory, it has been suggested that blockade of the recently

30

characterised dopamine D₃ receptor may give rise to beneficial antipsychotic activity without significant eps. (see for example Sokoloff et al, Nature, 1990; 347: 146-151; and Schwartz et al, Clinical Neuropharmacology, Vol 16, No. 4, 295-314, 1993). Preferred compounds of the present invention are therefore those which have higher (e.g. $\geq 10\times$ or $\geq 100\times$ higher) affinity for dopamine D₃ than dopamine D₂ receptors (such affinity can be measured using standard methodology for example using cloned dopamine receptors – see herein). Said compounds may advantageously be used as selective modulators of D₃ receptors.

The compounds of formula (I) are of potential use as antipsychotic agents for example in the treatment of schizophrenia, schizo-affective disorders, psychotic depression, mania, paranoid and delusional disorders. Furthermore, they could have utility as adjunct therapy in Parkinsons Disease, particularly with compounds such as L-DOPA and possibly dopaminergic agonists, to reduce the side effects experienced with these treatments on long term use (e.g. see Schwartz et al., Brain Res. Reviews, 1998, 26, 236-242). From the localisation of D₃ receptors, it could also be envisaged that the compounds could also have utility for the treatment of substance abuse where it has been suggested that D₃ receptors are involved (e.g. see Levant, 1997, Pharmacol. Rev., 49, 231-252). Examples of such substance abuse include alcohol, cocaine, heroin and nicotine abuse. Other conditions which may be treated by the compounds include dyskinetic disorders such as Parkinson's disease, neuroleptic-induced parkinsonism and tardive dyskinesias; depression; anxiety, cognitive impairment including memory disorders such as Alzheimers disease, eating disorders, sexual dysfunction, sleep disorders, emesis, movement disorders, obsessive-compulsive disorders, amnesia, aggression, autism, vertigo, dementia, circadian rhythm disorders and gastric motility disorders e.g. IBS.

In a further aspect therefore the present invention provides a method of treating a condition for which modulation (especially antagonism/inhibition) of dopamine receptors (especially dopamine D₃ receptors) is beneficial, which comprises administering to a mammal (e.g. human) in need thereof an effective amount of a compound of formula (I) or a pharmaceutically (i.e physiologically) acceptable salt thereof. Such conditions in particular include psychoses/psychotic conditions such as schizophrenia, and substance abuse.

The invention also provides the use of a compound of formula (I) or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof in the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of a condition in a mammal for which modulation (especially antagonism/inhibition) of dopamine receptors (especially dopamine D₃ receptors) is beneficial.

The invention also provides a compound of formula (I) or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof for use in the treatment of a condition in a mammal for which modulation (especially antagonism/inhibition) of dopamine receptors (especially dopamine D₃ receptors) is beneficial.

A preferred use for D₃ antagonists according to the present invention is in the treatment of psychoses such as schizophrenia or in the treatment of substance abuse.

Thus, a still further aspect the invention provides a method of treating a psychotic condition (e.g. schizophrenia) or substance abuse which comprises administering to a

mammal (e.g. human) in need thereof an effective amount of a compound of formula (I) as herein defined or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

Also provided is the use of a compound of formula (I) or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof in the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of a
5 psychotic condition (e.g. schizophrenia) or substance abuse in a mammal.

Also provided is a compound of formula (I) or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof for use in the treatment of a psychotic condition (e.g. schizophrenia) or substance abuse in a mammal.

Also provided is a compound of formula (I) or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt
10 thereof for use as an active therapeutic substance in a mammal, e.g. for use in the treatment of any of the conditions described herein.

"Treatment" includes prophylaxis, where this is appropriate for the relevant condition(s).

For use in medicine, the compounds of the present invention are usually
15 administered as a standard pharmaceutical composition. The present invention therefore provides in a further aspect a pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound of formula (I) or a pharmaceutically (i.e. physiologically) acceptable salt thereof and a pharmaceutically (i.e. physiologically) acceptable carrier. The pharmaceutical composition can be for use in the treatment of any of the conditions described herein.

20 The compounds of formula (I) may be administered by any convenient method, for example by oral, parenteral (e.g. intravenous), buccal, sublingual, nasal, rectal or transdermal administration and the pharmaceutical compositions adapted accordingly.

The compounds of formula (I) and their pharmaceutically acceptable salts which are active when given orally can be formulated as liquids or solids, for example syrups,
25 suspensions or emulsions, tablets, capsules and lozenges.

A liquid formulation will generally consist of a suspension or solution of the compound or pharmaceutically acceptable salt in a suitable liquid carrier(s) for example an aqueous solvent such as water, ethanol or glycerine, or a non-aqueous solvent, such as polyethylene glycol or an oil. The formulation may also contain a suspending agent,
30 preservative, flavouring or colouring agent.

A composition in the form of a tablet can be prepared using any suitable pharmaceutical carrier(s) routinely used for preparing solid formulations. Examples of such carriers include magnesium stearate, starch, lactose, sucrose and cellulose.

A composition in the form of a capsule can be prepared using routine
35 encapsulation procedures. For example, pellets containing the active ingredient can be prepared using standard carriers and then filled into a hard gelatin capsule; alternatively, a dispersion or suspension can be prepared using any suitable pharmaceutical carrier(s), for example aqueous gums, celluloses, silicates or oils and the dispersion or suspension then filled into a soft gelatin capsule.

40 Typical parenteral compositions consist of a solution or suspension of the compound or pharmaceutically acceptable salt in a sterile aqueous carrier or parenterally acceptable oil, for example polyethylene glycol, polyvinyl pyrrolidone, lecithin, arachis oil or sesame oil. Alternatively, the solution can be lyophilised and then reconstituted with a suitable solvent just prior to administration.

Compositions for nasal administration may conveniently be formulated as aerosols, drops, gels and powders. Aerosol formulations typically comprise a solution or fine suspension of the active substance in a pharmaceutically acceptable aqueous or non-aqueous solvent and are usually presented in single or multidose quantities in sterile form in a sealed container, which can take the form of a cartridge or refill for use with an atomising device. Alternatively the sealed container may be a unitary dispensing device such as a single dose nasal inhaler or an aerosol dispenser fitted with a metering valve which is intended for disposal once the contents of the container have been exhausted. Where the dosage form comprises an aerosol dispenser, it will contain a propellant which can be a compressed gas such as compressed air or an organic propellant such as a fluorochlorohydrocarbon. The aerosol dosage forms can also take the form of a pump-atomiser.

Compositions suitable for buccal or sublingual administration include tablets, lozenges and pastilles, wherein the active ingredient is formulated with a carrier such as sugar and acacia, tragacanth, or gelatin and glycerin.

Compositions for rectal administration are conveniently in the form of suppositories containing a conventional suppository base such as cocoa butter.

Compositions suitable for transdermal administration include ointments, gels and patches.

Preferably the composition is in unit dose form such as a tablet, capsule or ampoule.

Each dosage unit for oral administration contains preferably from 1 to 250 mg (and for parenteral administration contains preferably from 0.1 to 25 mg) of a compound of the formula (I) or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof calculated as the free base.

The pharmaceutically acceptable compounds of the invention will normally be administered in a daily dosage regimen (for an adult patient) of, for example, an oral dose of between 1 mg and 500 mg, preferably between 10 mg and 400 mg, e.g. between 10 and 250 mg or an intravenous, subcutaneous, or intramuscular dose of between 0.1 mg and 100 mg, preferably between 0.1 mg and 50 mg, e.g. between 1 and 25 mg of the compound of the formula (I) or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof calculated as the free base, the compound being administered 1 to 4 times per day. Suitably the compounds will be administered for a period of continuous therapy, for example for a week or more.

Biological Test Methods

Binding experiments on cloned dopamine (e.g. D₂, D₃ and D₄) receptors
The ability of the compounds to bind selectively to human D₂/D₃/D₄ dopamine receptors can be demonstrated by measuring their binding to cloned receptors. The inhibition constants (K_i) of test compounds for displacement of [¹²⁵I]-iodosulpride binding to human D₂/D₃ and [³H]-YM-09151 to D₄ dopamine receptors expressed in CHO cells were determined as follows. The cell lines were shown to be free from bacterial, fungal and mycoplasmal contaminants, and stocks of each were stored frozen in liquid nitrogen. Cultures were grown as monolayers or in suspension in standard cell culture media. Cells were recovered by scraping (from monolayers) or by centrifugation (from suspension

cultures), and were washed two or three times by suspension in phosphate buffered saline followed by collection by centrifugation. Cell pellets were stored frozen at -80°C. Crude cell membranes were prepared by homogenisation followed by high-speed centrifugation, and characterisation of cloned receptors achieved by radioligand binding.

- 5 **Preparation of CHO cell membranes:** Cell pellets were gently thawed at room temperature, and resuspended in about 20 volumes of ice-cold Extraction buffer; 5mM EDTA, 50mM Trizma pre-set crystals (pH7.4@37°C), 1mM MgCl₂, 5mM KCl and 120mM NaCl. The suspension was homogenised using an Ultra-Turrax at full speed for 15 seconds. The homogenate was centrifuged at 18,000 r.p.m for 15 min at 4°C in a
10 Sorvall RC5C centrifuge. Supernatant was discarded, and homogenate re-suspended in extraction buffer then centrifugation was repeated. The final pellet was resuspended in 50mM Trizma pre-set crystals (pH 7.4 @ 37°C) and stored in 1ml aliquot tubes at -80°C (D2 = 3.0E+08 cells, D3 = 7.0E+07 cells and D4 = 1.0E+08 cells). The protein content was determined using a BCA protocol and bovine serum albumin as a standard (Smith, P.
15 K., et al., Measurement of protein using bicinchoninic acid. Anal. Biochem. 150, 76-85 (1985)).

- Binding experiments:** Crude D2/D3 cell membranes were incubated with 0.03nM [¹²⁵I]-Iodosulpride (~2000 Ci/mmol; Amersham, U. K.) and D4 with 0.8nM [³H]-YM-09151 (~85 Ci/mmol; NEN, UK), and the test compound in a buffer containing
20 50mM Trizma pre-set crystals (pH 7.4 @ 37°C), 120mM NaCl, 5mM KCl, 2mM CaCl₂, 1mM MgCl₂, 0.3% (w/v) bovine serum albumin. The total volume is 0.2ml and incubated in a water bath at 37°C for 40 minutes. Following incubation, samples were filtered onto GF/B Unifilters using a Canberra Packard Filtermate, and washed four times with ice-cold 50mM Trizma pre-set crystals (pH 7.4 @ 37°C). The radioactivity on the
25 filters was measured using a Canberra Packard Topcount Scintillation counter. Non-specific binding was defined with 10µM SKF-102161 (YM-09151). For competition curves, 10 serial log concentrations of competing cold drug were used (Dilution range: 10µM-10pM). Competition curves were analysed using Inflexion, an iterative curve fitting programme in Excel. Results were expressed as pKi values where
30 $pKi = -\log_{10}[Ki]$.

The exemplified compounds have pKi values within the range of 7.5 – 9.5 at the dopamine D3 receptor. Selected especially preferred compounds are as follows, with pKi values between 8.0 – 9.5. pKi results are only estimated to be accurate to about ±0.2-0.3.

- 35 Examples: 1, 5, 8, 13, 14, 22, 51, 61, 63, 67, 70, 72, 74, 91, 93, 95, 96, 99, 100, 126, 130, 131, 133, 135, 137, 138, 143, 146, 168, 169, 173, 176.

Functional Activity at cloned dopamine receptors

- The functional activity of compounds at human D2 and human D3 receptors (i.e. agonism
40 or antagonism) may be determined using a Cytosensor Microphysiometer (McConnell HM et al Science 1992 257 1906-1912). In Microphysiometer experiments, cells (hD2_CHO or hD3_CHO) were seeded into 12mm Transwell inserts (Costar) at 300000 cells/cup in foetal calf serum (FCS)-containing medium. The cells were incubated for 6h at 37°C in 5%CO₂, before changing to FCS-free medium. After a further 16-18h, cups

- were loaded into the sensor chambers of the Cytosensor Microphysiometer (Molecular Devices) and the chambers perfused with running medium (bicarbonate-free Dulbecco's modified Eagles medium containing 2 mM glutamine and 44 mM NaCl) at a flow rate of 100 μ l/min. Each pump cycle lasted 90s. The pump was on for the first 60s and the acidification rate determined between 68 and 88s, using the Cytosoft programme. Test compounds were diluted in running medium. In experiments to determine agonist activity, cells were exposed (4.5 min for hD2, 7.5 min for hD3) to increasing concentrations of putative agonist at half hour intervals. Seven concentrations of the putative agonist were used. Peak acidification rate to each putative agonist concentration was determined and concentration-response curves fitted using Robofit [Tilford, N.S., Bowen, W.P. & Baxter, G.S. Br. J. Pharmacol. (1995), Vol. 115, 160P]. In experiments to determine antagonist potency, cells were treated at 30 min intervals with five pulses of a submaximal concentration of quinpirole (100 nM for hD2 cells, 30 nM for hD3 cells), before exposure to the lowest concentration of putative antagonist. At the end of the next 30 min interval, cells were pulsed again with quinpirole (in the continued presence of the antagonist) before exposure to the next highest antagonist concentration. In all, five concentrations of antagonist were used in each experiment. Peak acidification rate to each agonist concentration was determined and concentration-inhibition curves fitted using Robofit.

20 Examples

The invention is further illustrated by the following non-limiting examples :

Description 1

- 25 **2,3,4,5-Tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine**
1,2-Phenylenediacetonitrile (7.5g, 48 mmol) dissolved in ethanol (150ml) was added to Raney Ni (2g) which had been previously washed with ethanol (3x20ml). The mixture was then hydrogenated at 50°C at 50psi pressure with shaking for 24h. The reaction mixture was then cooled to room temperature and filtered through a pad of kieselguhr and washed through with ethanol (100ml). The filtrate was evaporated *in vacuo* to give a brown oil which was chromatographed on silica gel (100g), eluting with 2-10% methanol in CH_2Cl_2 to give the title compound as a brown oil (2.45g, 35%).
- 30
- 35 Mass spectrum (API^+) Found: 148 (MH^+). $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{13}\text{N}$ requires 147.

Description 2

- 7-Hydroxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine, hydrobromide**
7-Methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (10 g) (known from M. Kanao et al., *Chem. Pharm. Bull.* 1982, 30, 180-188) in 48% aqueous hydrobromic acid (350 ml) was allowed to stir at 100 °C for 4 h. The mixture was cooled to 20 °C then evaporated to dryness *in vacuo* to give the title compound (14.5 g) as a brown solid.
- 40

Mass spectrum (API⁺): Found 164 (MH⁺). C₁₀H₁₃NO requires 163.

¹H NMR (DMSO) δ: 2.80 – 3.25 (8H, m), 4.42 (2H, br s), 6.50 – 6.70 (2H, m), 6.98 (1H, d, J = 8 Hz), 8.86 (1H, br s).

5

Description 3

3-(*tert*-Butyloxycarbonyl)-7-hydroxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

To a solution of 7-hydroxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine, hydrobromide (14.5 g) in tetrahydrofuran (100 ml) and water (70 ml), was added triethylamine (8 g), followed by a solution of di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate (14 g) in THF (20 ml). The resulting mixture was allowed to stir at 20 °C for 16 h, partitioned between ethyl acetate (200 ml) and water (200 ml). The aqueous layer was washed with ethyl acetate (100 ml). The combined organic extracts were washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (100 ml), dried (Na₂SO₄) and evaporated to dryness *in vacuo*. The resulting oil was purified by silica gel chromatography. Elution with ethyl acetate in hexane (10% - 30%) gave the title compound (8 g).

10

15

Mass spectrum (API⁺): Found 164 (MH⁺-Boc). C₁₅H₂₁NO₃ requires 263.

20

¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.48 (9H, s), 2.75 – 2.87 (4H, m), 3.40 – 3.60 (4H, m), 4.95 (1H, s), 6.50 – 6.62 (2H, m), 6.96 (1H, d, J = 8 Hz).

Description 4

3-(*tert*-Butyloxycarbonyl)-7-trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

25

30

To a stirred mixture of 3-(*tert*-butyloxycarbonyl)-7-hydroxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (7 g) and triethylamine (5.4 ml) in dry dichloromethane under argon at -20 °C, was added, dropwise, trifluoromethanesulfonic anhydride (5 ml). The resulting mixture was allowed to warm slowly to 20 °C over 16 h, then was poured into saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (200 ml) and extracted with dichloromethane (2 x 150 ml). The combined organic extracts were washed with brine (150 ml), dried (Na₂SO₄) and evaporated *in vacuo* to give an amber oil. Silica gel chromatography, eluting with ethyl acetate in hexane (10% - 30%) gave the title compound (7 g) as an amber oil.

35

Mass spectrum (API⁺): Found 396 (MH⁺). C₁₆H₂₀F₃NO₅S requires 395.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.48 (9H, s), 2.85 – 2.95 (4H, m), 3.5 – 3.65 (4H, m), 7.00 – 7.05 (2H, m), 7.15 – 7.27 (1H, m).

40

Description 5

3-(*tert*-Butyloxycarbonyl)-7-cyano-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

A mixture of 3-(*tert*-butyloxycarbonyl)-7-trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (4.78 g, 12.1 mmol), zinc cyanide (1.42 g, 15.6 mmol) and *tetrakis*-triphenylphosphine palladium (0) (1.4 g, 1.2 mmol, 10 mol%), in dry dimethylformamide

- (50ml) was stirred at 100 °C for 3 h under argon. After cooling to room temperature the reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (120 ml) and filtered. The filtrate was washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (100 ml), then water (2 x 50 ml), then brine (50 ml). The organic layer was dried over sodium sulfate and evaporated *in vacuo* to give brown oil, which was purified by chromatography on silica gel with 20 – 100% ethyl acetate - hexane elution to give the title compound (0.765 g, 23%) as a brown oil.

Mass spectrum (API⁺): Found 173 (MH⁺-Boc). C₁₆H₂₀N₂O₂ requires 272.

- ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.47 (9H, s), 2.93 (4H, m), 3.56 (4H, m), 7.21 (1H, d, J = 8 Hz), 7.42 (2H, m).

Description 6

7-Cyano-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

- A mixture of 3-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-7-cyano-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (765 mg, 2.81 mmol) and trifluoroacetic acid (2 ml), in dichloromethane (20 ml) was stirred at 40 °C for 1 h. The reaction mixture was evaporated to dryness *in vacuo* and partitioned between ethyl acetate (50 ml) and water (50 ml). The aqueous layer was basified using potassium carbonate and re-extracted with ethyl acetate (2 x 30ml). The combined basic organic extracts were dried over sodium sulfate and evaporated *in vacuo* to give the title compound as a colourless oil (212 mg, 44%).

Mass spectrum (API⁺): Found 173 (MH⁺). C₁₁H₁₂N₂ requires 172.

- ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.04 (1H, br s), 2.95 (8H, m), 7.18 (1H, d, J = 8 Hz), 7.38 (2H, m).

Description 7

3-(*tert*-Butoxycarbonyl)-7-(3-(5-methyl)-1,2,4-oxadiazolyl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

- To a suspension of sodium methoxide (0.6 g, 11 mmol) in anhydrous methanol (12ml) under argon, was added hydroxylamine hydrochloride (0.76 g, 11 mmol), followed by 3-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-7-cyano-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (1.5 g, 5.5 mmol). The mixture was stirred under reflux for 16 h, then allowed to cool to room temperature. The methanol was evaporated *in vacuo* and the resulting residue partitioned between dichloromethane (100 ml) and water (100 ml). The aqueous layer was washed with more CH₂Cl₂ (100 ml). The combined organic extracts were dried and evaporated *in vacuo* to give a solid (1.8 g), which was mixed with acetic anhydride (15 ml) and heated at 120 °C for 2 h. Excess acetic anhydride was evaporated *in vacuo* and the resulting oily residue partitioned between CH₂Cl₂ (250 ml) and saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (250 ml). The organic layer was washed with more bicarbonate solution (200 ml), dried, and evaporated to give an oil. Gravity silica gel chromatography eluting with ethyl acetate in hexane gave the title compound (3.2 g, 73 %) as a colourless oil.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.49 (9H, s), 2.65 (3H, s), 2.96 (4H, m), 3.58 (4H, m), 7.22 (1H, d, J = 8 Hz), 7.80 (2H, m).

Description 8

5 7-(3-(5-Methyl)-1,2,4-oxadiazolyl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

A solution of 3-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-7-(3-(5-methyl)-1,2,4-oxadiazolyl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (1.2 g, 3.6 mmol) in CH₂Cl₂ (15 ml) and trifluoroacetic acid (15 ml) was heated under reflux for 2 h. Solvent was evaporated *in vacuo* and the residue partitioned between diethyl ether (50 ml) and water (50 ml). The aqueous layer was saturated with potassium carbonate then extracted with CH₂Cl₂ (2 x 100 ml). The combined organic extracts were dried and evaporated *in vacuo* to give the title compound (0.74 g, 88 %) as an oil.

Mass spectrum (AP⁺): Found 230 (MH⁺). C₁₃H₁₅N₃O requires 229.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.80 (1H, br s), 2.65 (3H, s), 2.90 - 3.00 (8H, m), 7.20 (1H, d, J = 8 Hz), 7.75 - 7.85 (2H, m).

Description 9

20 7-(3-(*tert*-Butoxycarbonyl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepinyl)carboxamide

To a solution of 3-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-7-cyano-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (5.44 g, 20 mmol) cooled in ice bath, was added potassium carbonate (0.4 g) in water (1 ml), followed by dropwise addition of 30 % w/w hydrogen peroxide (2.4 ml). The resulting mixture was stirred at 5 °C for 5 min, then the ice-bath was removed. After another 5 min, water (100 ml) was added. The solid precipitate was collected by filtration and dried to give the title compound (4.35 g, 75 %) as a colourless solid.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.48 (9H, s), 2.96 (4H, m), 3.56 (4H, m), 5.60 - 6.30 (2H, br d), 7.19 (1H, d, J = 8 Hz), 7.50 - 7.80 (2H, m).

Description 10

30 3-(*tert*-Butoxycarbonyl)-7-(5-(3-methyl)-1,2,4-oxadiazolyl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

A mixture of 7-(3-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepinyl)carboxamide (4.29 g, 14.8 mmol) and *N,N*-dimethyl acetamide dimethyl acetal (6 ml, 41 mmol) was heated at 125 °C under argon. Methanol was removed from the reaction by means of a distillation condenser over 2 h. The reaction mixture was further evaporated *in vacuo* to give a thick brown oily residue. To this residue was added, in order, dioxan (10 ml), 5M sodium hydroxide (4 ml), hydroxylamine hydrochloride (1.4 g, 20 mmol) and 70 % aqueous acetic acid (20 ml). The combined mixture was allowed to stir at room temperature for 15 min and then at 90 °C for 1 h. The mixture was treated with water (100 ml) and extracted with CH₂Cl₂ (2x150 ml). Combined organic extracts were washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate (100 ml), dried and evaporated *in vacuo*

to give an oil. Gravity silica gel chromatography, eluting with ethyl acetate in hexane, gave the title compound (3.9 g, 80 %) as a colourless solid.

- ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.49 (9H, s), 2.47 (3H, s), 2.98 (4H, m), 3.60 (4H, m), 7.27 (1H, d, J = 8 Hz), 7.80 - 7.90 (2H, m).

Description 11

7-(5-(3-Methyl)-1,2,4-oxadiazolyl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

- A solution of 3-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-7-(5-(3-methyl)-1,2,4-oxadiazolyl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (3.8 g, 11.6 mmol) in CH₂Cl₂ (50 ml) and trifluoroacetic acid (12 ml) was heated under reflux for 2 h. Solvent was evaporated *in vacuo* and the residue partitioned between diethyl ether (200 ml) and water (200 ml). The aqueous layer was saturated with potassium carbonate then extracted with CH₂Cl₂ (3 x 200 ml). The combined organic extracts were dried and evaporated *in vacuo* to give the title compound (2.4 g, 91 %) as a colourless solid.

Mass spectrum (AP⁺): Found 230 (MH⁺). C₁₃H₁₅N₃O requires 229.

- ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.86 (1H, br s), 2.47 (3H, s), 3.00 (8H, m), 7.25 (1H, d, J = 8 Hz), 7.80 - 7.90 (2H, m).

Description 12

3-Acetyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

- A solution of acetic anhydride (6.37 g, 0.062 mol) in dichloromethane (50 ml) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of 2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (8.35 g, 0.057 mol) and triethylamine (8.7 ml) in dichloromethane (50 ml) at 0 °C under argon. After stirring at room temperature for 18 h, water (80 ml) was added and the organic layer separated. The organic layer was washed with 0.5 M hydrochloric acid (50 ml), saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (50 ml), water (50 ml) and then dried (Na₂SO₄). Evaporation of the solvent *in vacuo* gave the title compound (10.24 g, 95 %) as a yellow oil which solidified on standing.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.18 (3H, s), 2.85 - 3.00 (4H, m), 3.55 - 3.60 (2H, m), 3.72 - 3.80 (2H, m), 7.10 - 7.20 (4H, m).

- Mass Spectrum AP⁺: Found 190 (MH⁺). C₁₂H₁₅NO requires 189.

Description 13

3-Acetyl-7-chlorosulfonyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

- A solution of 3-acetyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (4.0 g, 0.021 mol) in dichloromethane (25 ml) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of chlorosulphonic acid in dichloromethane (25 ml) at -70 °C under argon. After warming to room temperature, the reaction was stirred for 18 h before being quenched in ice/water (200 ml). The resulting mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 100 ml), dried (Na₂SO₄) and the

solvent evaporated *in vacuo* to give the title compound (2.74 g, 45 %) as a pale yellow solid.

- ¹H NMR: δ (CDCl₃): 2.21 (3H, s), 3.0 - 3.10 (4H, m), 3.60 - 3.70 (2H, m), 3.74 - 3.80 (2H, m), 7.35 - 7.40 (1H, m), 7.80 - 7.85 (2H, m).
Mass spectrum AP⁺: Found 288 & 290 (MH⁺). C₁₂H₁₄NSO₂Cl requires 287 & 289.

Description 14

3-Acetyl-7-methylsulfonyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

- To a stirred solution of sodium sulphite (1.60 g, 12.6 mmol) and sodium hydrogen carbonate (1.14 g, 13.56 mmol) in water (25 ml) was added 3-acetyl-7-chlorosulfonyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (2.6 g, 9.04 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (10 ml). The reaction mixture was then heated at 75 °C for 2 h, cooled to 30 °C and methyl iodide (2.8 ml, 45.20 mmol) added. After stirring at 50 °C for 24 h, the reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature and partitioned between water (50 ml) and ethyl acetate (100 ml). The aqueous layer was then separated and further extracted with ethyl acetate (2 x 80 ml). The combined organics were then dried (Na₂SO₄) and the solvent removed *in vacuo* to give the title compound (1.77 g, 73 %) as a pale yellow solid.
- ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) 2.20 (3H, s), 2.99 - 3.05 (4H, m), 3.06 (3H, s), 3.61 - 3.64 (2H, m), 3.73 - 3.77 (2H, m), 7.32 - 7.37 (1H, m), 7.7 - 7.75 (2H, m).
Mass Spectrum AP⁺: Found 268 (MH⁺). C₁₃H₁₇NSO₃ requires 267.

Description 15

7-Methylsulfonyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

- A solution of 3-acetyl-7-methylsulfonyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (1.75 g, 6.55 mmol) in 5 M hydrochloric acid was heated at reflux for 18 h. The reaction mixture was then cooled to room temperature, basified to pH = 12 with potassium carbonate and the solvent evaporated *in vacuo*. The solid residue was then extracted with ethyl acetate (5 x 60 ml) and the combined organics dried (Na₂SO₄). The solvent was then evaporated *in vacuo* to give the title compound (450 mg, 32 %) as a pale yellow oil.
- ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) 1.88 (1H, br s), 2.95 - 3.13 (8H, m), 3.04 (3H, s), 7.25 - 7.30 (1H, d), 7.65 - 7.72 (2H, m).
- Mass Spectrum AP⁺: Found 226 (MH⁺). C₁₁H₁₅NSO₂ requires 225.

Description 15a

7-Ethylsulfonyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

- This compound was prepared in a similar manner to Descriptions 14 and 15, using ethyl iodide instead of methyl iodide.
- Mass Spectrum AP⁺: Found 240 (MH⁺). C₁₂H₁₇NSO₂ requires 239.

Description 16

3-Trifluoroacetyl-7-(5-methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

- (a) Trifluoroacetic anhydride (13.2 ml) was added to a solution of 7-cyano-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (14.5 g) and triethylamine (14.2 ml) in dichloromethane (300 ml) at 0 °C. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature over 1.5 h, then washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (300 ml), the organic layer dried and evaporated to give 3-trifluoroacetyl-7-cyano-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine as a yellow oil (20.3 g).
- (b) 3-Trifluoroacetyl-7-cyano-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (20.3 g) and nickel-aluminium alloy (35.5 g) in 75% aq. formic acid (400 ml) were heated at 80 °C for 3 h. The reaction was allowed to cool, filtered and the filtrate extracted with ethyl acetate. The combined organic layers were washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, dried and evaporated to give 3-trifluoroacetyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine-7-carbaldehyde (20.0 g) as a yellow oil.
- (c) 3-Trifluoroacetyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine-7-carbaldehyde (20.0 g) and hydroxylamine hydrochloride (6.1 g) in pyridine (140 ml) were stirred overnight and the reaction then evaporated *in vacuo*. The residue was partitioned between ethyl acetate and 10% sodium carbonate solution and the combined organic layers dried and evaporated to give 3-trifluoroacetyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine-7-carbaldehyde oxime (17.2 g) as a yellow solid.
- (d) To a solution of 3-Trifluoroacetyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine-7-carbaldehyde oxime (17.2 g) in chloroform (700 ml) was added N-bromosuccinimide (11.8 g), portionwise over 5 min., and the mixture stirred for 1.5 h. 2-Chloropropene (30.3 ml) was added and the reaction cooled to -20 °C. Triethylamine (25.1 ml) in chloroform was added over 10 min. and the reaction stirred at room temperature for 18 h. The solution was washed with 2M HCl, dried and evaporated and the residue chromatographed on Si gel, gradient eluting with 10-20% EtOAc in hexane to give the title compound (7.1 g) as a yellow oil.

Mass spectrum (AP^+) : Found 325 [MH^+] $C_{16}H_{15}N_2O_2F_3$ requires 324.

Description 17**7-(5-Methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine**

A mixture of 3-trifluoroacetyl-7-(5-methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (7.1 g) and K_2CO_3 (12.1 g) in 1:1 methanol:water (400 ml) was heated at 50 °C for 1h. The mixture was cooled, poured into water (500 ml) and extracted with dichloromethane. The combined organic layers were dried and evaporated *in vacuo* to give the title compound as a yellow oil (3.9 g).

Mass spectrum (AP^+) : Found 229 [MH^+] $C_{14}H_{16}N_2O$ requires 228.

Description 17a**7-(5-Methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine hydrochloride**

a) 7-(1-Hydroxyimino-ethyl)-1,2,4,5-tetrahydro-benzo[d]azepine-3-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester

- 7-Acetyl-3-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-3-benzazepine (8.9g, 30.8mmol) was dissolved in pyridine (30ml) and hydroxylamine hydrochloride (2.3g, 33mmol) was added and the mixture stirred for 2 h at room temperature. The solvent was evaporated and hexane (300ml) and water (100ml) were added and the colourless precipitate was filtered and washed with hexane (3 x 100ml). The compound was dried in vacuo to give the title compound (6.23g, 66%).
- 10 Mass Spectrum AP⁺: Found 205 ([M-Boc]⁺). C₁₇H₂₄N₂O₃ requires 304.

b) 7-(5-Methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-1,2,4,5-tetrahydro-benzo[d]azepine-3-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester

- 7-(1-Hydroxyimino-ethyl)-1,2,4,5-tetrahydro-benzo[d]azepine-3-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (2.89g, 9.5mmol) was cooled to 0°C in tetrahydrofuran (70ml) under argon. Butyllithium (7.6ml, 2.5M in hexane, 19mmol) was added dropwise to give an orange solution which was stirred for 1 h. N-Methyl-N-methoxy acetamide (824mg, 8mmol) was added dropwise in tetrahydrofuran (30ml) over 3 min. The mixture was stirred for 1 h and then poured into water (27ml) and concentrated sulphuric acid (3ml). The resulting mixture was heated to reflux for 1 h and then cooled and neutralised with solid sodium bicarbonate. The mixture was partitioned between dichloromethane (200ml) and water (100ml) and the layers separated. The aqueous portion was extracted with dichloromethane (2 x 100ml) and the combined organic extracts were evaporated. The residue was treated with dichloromethane (50ml) and di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate (2.18g, 10mmol) and the mixture stirred for 20 min, washed with water (50ml) and evaporated. The residue was treated with pyridine (10ml) and hydroxylamine hydrochloride (0.77g, 11mmol) and the mixture stirred for 1 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue dissolved in dichloromethane (50 ml) which was washed with dilute hydrochloric acid (3 x 50ml, 0.5M). The solvent was evaporated and the residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (eluent dichloromethane) which gave the title compound as a colourless solid (447mg, 61%).
- 25
- 30

Mass Spectrum AP⁺: Found 229 ([M-Boc]⁺). C₁₉H₂₄N₂O₃ requires 328.

- 35 c) 7-(5-Methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-3-benzazepine hydrochloride

- 7-(5-Methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-1,2,4,5-tetrahydro-benzo[d]azepine-3-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (1.9g, 5.8mmol) was treated with ethanol (20ml) followed by a saturated ethanolic hydrochloride solution (20ml). The mixture was stirred for 12 h until a precipitate was observed. Diethyl ether (100ml) was added and the precipitate filtered and dried in vacuo to give the title compound as a colourless solid (1.25g, 81%).
- 40

Mass Spectrum AP^+ : Found 229 $([M+H]^+)$. $C_{14}H_{16}N_2O$ requires 228.

1H NMR (MeOD) δ : 2.47 (3H, s), 3.20 (4H, m), 3.33 (4H, m), 6.55 (1H, s), 7.34 (1H, d, $J = 8$ Hz), 7.64 (1H, d, $J = 8$ Hz), 7.68 (1H, s).

5

Description 18

3-(*tert*-Butyloxycarbonyl)-7-methanesulfonyloxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

- 10 A solution of 3-(*tert*-butyloxycarbonyl)-7-hydroxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (3.0 g, 0.011 mol), methanesulfonylchloride (1.44 g, 0.013 mol), triethylamine (1.27 g, 0.013 mol) and dichloromethane (50 ml) was stirred at room temperature for 18 h. The reaction mixture was then partitioned between dichloromethane (50 ml) and a saturated solution of sodium hydrogen carbonate (50 ml). The organic layer was separated, washed with water (50 ml) and then dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent was then evaporated *in vacuo* to give the title compound (3.85 g, 99 %) as a pale yellow oil.

15

1H NMR ($CDCl_3$) δ : 1.48 (9H, s), 2.86 - 2.92 (4H, m), 3.13 (3H, s), 3.53 - 3.56 (4H, m), 7.00 - 7.03 (2H, m), 7.13 - 7.16 (1H, m).

- 20 Mass spectrum (AP^+): Found 242 $[M-BOC]H^+$. $C_{16}H_{23}NSO_5$ requires 341.

Description 19

7-Methanesulfonyloxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

- 25 A solution of 3-(*tert*-butyloxycarbonyl)-7-methanesulfonyloxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (3.8 g, 0.011 mol), trifluoroacetic acid (3.76 g, 0.033 mol) and dichloromethane (50 ml) was heated at 50 °C for 5h. The solvents were then evaporated *in vacuo* and the residue partitioned between water (200 ml) and ethyl acetate (150 ml). The aqueous layer was removed and washed with ethyl acetate (100 ml) and then basified to pH 14 with 40% sodium hydroxide. The suspension was then extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 150 ml) and the combined organic layers dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvents were evaporated *in vacuo* to give the title compound (2.15 g, 80 %) as a colourless oil.

30

1H NMR ($CDCl_3$) δ : 2.88 - 3.00 (8H, m), 3.13 (3H, s), 6.99 - 7.03 (2H, m), 7.12 (1H, d).

35

Mass spectrum (AP^+): Found 242 $(MH)^+$. $C_{11}H_{15}NSO_3$ requires 241.

Description 20

3-(3-Chloropropyl)-7-methanesulfonyloxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

- 40 A mixture of 7-methanesulfonyloxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (1.75g, 7.3 mmol), 1-bromo-3-chloropropane (0.80 ml, 8.1 mmol) and triethylamine (3 ml, 21.5 mmol) in anhydrous tetrahydrofuran (25 ml) was heated at reflux for 5h. The mixture was cooled, evaporated *in vacuo* and the residue partitioned between water (100 ml) and

ethyl acetate (100 ml). The aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (100 ml) and the combined organics washed with brine (150 ml), dried (Na_2SO_4) and evaporated *in vacuo*. Purification by chromatography on silica gel using 10 - 70% ethyl acetate in hexane gradient elution gave the title compound as a pale orange oil (1.22g, 53%).

5

Mass spectrum (API^+): Found 318 (MH^+). $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{20}^{35}\text{ClNO}_3\text{S}$ requires 317.

^1H NMR δ 1.85 - 2.05 (2H, m), 2.55 - 2.70 (6H, m), 2.85 - 2.95 (4H, m), 3.12 (3H, s), 3.60 - 3.66 (2H, t, $J = 6.5$ Hz), 6.95 - 7.15 (3H, m).

10

The following compounds were prepared in a similar manner to Description 20:

(a) 3-(3-Chloropropyl)-7-cyano-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine.

15

Mass spectrum (API^+): Found 249 (MH^+). $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{17}^{35}\text{ClN}_2$ requires 248.
Prepared from the compound of Description 6.

(b) 3-(3-Chloropropyl)-7-(5-methyl-1,2,4-oxadiazol-3-yl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine.

20

Mass spectrum (API^+): Found 306 (MH^+). $\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{20}^{35}\text{ClN}_3\text{O}$ requires 305.
Prepared from the compound of Description 8.

(c) 3-(3-Chloropropyl)-7-methylsulfonyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

25

Mass spectrum (API^+): Found 302 (MH^+). $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{20}^{35}\text{ClNO}_2\text{S}$ requires 301.
Prepared from the compound of Description 15.

(d) 3-(3-Chloropropyl)-7-(morpholin-4-yl)sulfonyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

30

Mass spectrum (API^+): Found 373 (MH^+). $\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{25}^{35}\text{ClN}_2\text{O}_3\text{S}$ requires 372.
Prepared from the compound of Description 22.

(e) 3-(3-Chloropropyl)-7-(5-methyl-oxazol-2-yl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

35

Mass spectrum (API^+): Found 305 (MH^+). $\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{21}^{35}\text{ClN}_2\text{O}$ requires 304.
Prepared from the compound of Description 25.

(f) 3-(3-Chloropropyl)-7-ethylsulfonyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine
Mass spectrum (API^+): Found 316 (MH^+). $\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{22}^{35}\text{ClNO}_2\text{S}$ requires 315.
Prepared from the compound of Description 15a.

40

(g) 3-(3-Chloropropyl)-7-(pyrrolidine-1-sulfonyl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

45

Mass spectrum (API^+): Found 357 (MH^+). $\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{25}^{35}\text{ClN}_2\text{O}_2\text{S}$ requires 356.

Prepared from the compound of Description 22(a).

(h) 3-(3-Chloropropyl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine-7-sulfonic acid dimethylamide

- 5 Mass spectrum (API^+): Found 331 (MH^+). $\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{23}^{35}\text{ClN}_2\text{O}_2\text{S}$ requires 330.
Prepared from the compound of Description 22(b).

(i) 3-(3-Chloropropyl)-7-pyrazin-2-yl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine
Mass spectrum (API^+): Found 302 (MH^+). $\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{20}^{35}\text{ClN}_3$ requires 301.

- 10 Prepared from the compound of Description 28.

(j) 3-(3-Chloropropyl)-7-(5-methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

Mass spectrum (API^+): Found 305 (MH^+). $\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{21}^{35}\text{ClN}_2\text{O}$ requires 304.

- 15 Prepared from the compound of Description 17.

Description 21

3-Acetyl-7-(morpholin-4-yl)sulfonyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

- 20 A mixture of 3-acetyl-7-chlorosulfonyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (4.0 g, 13.9 mmol), morpholine (1.8 ml, 20.8 mmol) and triethylamine (2.14 ml, 15.3 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (120 ml) was heated at 60 °C for 3 h. The reaction mixture was then cooled, filtered and the filtrate evaporated *in vacuo* to give a yellow solid. Crystallisation from dichloromethane/*n*-hexane gave the title compound as an off-white solid (4.4 g, 94 %).

25 Mass Spectrum AP^+ : Found 339 (MH^+). $\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{22}\text{N}_2\text{SO}_4$ requires 338.

Description 22

7-(Morpholin-4-yl)sulfonyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

- 30 A solution of 3-acetyl-7-(morpholin-4-yl)sulfonyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (3.0 g, 8.9 mmol) in 5 M hydrochloric acid was heated at reflux for 18 h. The reaction mixture was then cooled to room temperature, basified to pH = 12 with potassium carbonate and the solvent evaporated *in vacuo*. The solid residue was then extracted with ethyl acetate (5 x 100 ml) and the combined organics dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent was
35 then evaporated *in vacuo* to give the title compound (1.49 g, 57 %) as a pale yellow oil.

Mass Spectrum AP^+ : Found 297 (MH^+). $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{20}\text{N}_2\text{SO}_3$ requires 296.

The following compounds were prepared in a similar manner to Descriptions 21 and 22:

40 (a) 7-(Pyrrolidine-1-sulfonyl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

Mass Spectrum AP^+ : Found 281 (MH^+). $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{20}\text{N}_2\text{SO}_2$ requires 280.

Prepared using pyrrolidine instead of morpholine in Description 21.

(b) 2,3,4,5-Tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine-7-sulfonic acid dimethylamide

Mass Spectrum AP^+ : Found 255 (MH^+). $C_{12}H_{18}N_2SO_2$ requires 254.

Prepared using dimethylamine instead of morpholine in Description 21.

5

Description 23**3-(*tert*-Butyloxycarbonyl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine-7-carboxylic acid prop-2-ynyl amide**

- 10 A mixture of 3-(*tert*-butyloxycarbonyl)-7-cyano-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (10 g, 37 mmol) and KOH (4.1 g, 73 mmol) in EtOH (100 ml) and water (20 ml) was heated under reflux for 24 h. Mixture allowed to cool and evaporated *in vacuo* and the residue redissolved in water (150 ml). The solution was acidified to pH4 and the precipitate filtered and dried. The crude acid (5 g, 17 mmol) was then dissolved in dichloromethane (100 ml), under Argon and propargylamine (0.77 g, 14 mmol), EDC (2.9 g 15 mmol) and
- 15 HOBT (200 mg) added and the reaction stirred for 18 h. Saturated $NaHCO_3$ solution (100 ml) was added and the organic layer separated. The aqueous layer was re-extracted with dichloromethane and the combined organic layers dried and evaporated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (gradient elution, hexane/ethyl acetate) to give the title compound (3.8 g) as a colourless solid.
- 20 Mass Spectrum AP^+ : Found 327 ($[M-H]^+$). $C_{19}H_{24}N_2O_3$ requires 328.

Description 24**3-(*tert*-Butyloxycarbonyl)-7-(5-methyl-oxazol-2-yl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine**

- 25 A mixture of 2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine-7-carboxylic acid prop-2-ynyl amide (3.8 g) and mercury (II) acetate (350 mg) in glacial acetic acid was heated under reflux for 1.5 h. After cooling, the solvent was removed *in vacuo* and the residue partitioned between EtOAc (200 ml) and saturated $NaHCO_3$ solution (100 ml). The aqueous layer was re-extracted with EtOAc and the combined organic layers dried and evaporated *in*
- 30 *vacuo*. The residue was purified using silica gel chromatography (gradient elution, hexane/EtOAc) to give the title compound (2.35 g) as a colourless oil.
- Mass Spectrum AP^+ : Found 229 ($[M-Boc]^+$). $C_{19}H_{24}N_2O_3$ requires 328.

Description 25

- 35 7-(5-Methyl-oxazol-2-yl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine
- Prepared from Description 24 by a similar procedure to that of Description 6.
- Mass Spectrum AP^+ : Found 229 (MH^+). $C_{14}H_{16}N_2O$ requires 228.

Description 26

- 40 7-Acetyl-3-(*tert*-butyloxycarbonyl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

- To a stirred solution of 3-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-7-trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-3-benzazepine (10 g, 25.3 mmol) in anhydrous dimethylformamide (100 ml) under argon at room temperature, was added triethylamine (7.05 ml, 50.6 mmol), butyl vinyl ether (16.4 ml, 126.6 mmol), 1,3-bis(diphenylphosphino)propane (0.412 g, 1 mmol) and palladium acetate (0.202 g, 0.9 mmol) sequentially. The resultant mixture was heated at 85°C for 1.5 h and cooled to room temperature. 4 % Aqueous hydrochloric acid (150 ml) was added and stirring continued for 0.5 h. The reaction mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 300 ml) and the combined organics washed with water (4 x 500 ml), dried (Na₂SO₄) and evaporated *in vacuo* to afford a brown gum. Chromatography on silica gel with 0 - 30% ethyl acetate - hexane gradient elution gave the title compound (5.8 g, 79 %) as a colourless solid.

- ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.49 (9H, s), 2.58 (3H, s), 2.96 (4H, m), 3.57 (4H, m), 7.21 (1H, d, *J* = 8 Hz), 7.72 (2H, m).

Description 27

3-(*tert*-Butoxycarbonyl)-7-(pyrazin-2-yl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-3-benzazepine

- To a stirred solution of 7-acetyl-3-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-3-benzazepine (12 g, 42 mmol) in dioxan (60 ml) was added selenium dioxide (4.61 g, 42 mmol) in dioxan (60 ml) and water (15 ml). The mixture was heated under reflux for 18 h., cooled and the solid residue filtered. The filtrate was evaporated *in vacuo* and the residue azeotroped with toluene to give an orange gum which was dissolved in ethanol and added dropwise to a stirred solution of ethylenediamine (3 g, 50 mmol) in ethanol at 0 °C. After the addition was complete, KOH (2.6 g, 46 mmol) was added and the reaction heated under reflux for 3h. The reaction mixture was then allowed to cool and evaporated *in vacuo*. The residue was partitioned between water and dichloromethane and the combined organic extracts dried and evaporated *in vacuo* to give a brown gum. Purification by silica gel chromatography (eluant 20% EtOAc:hexane) gave the title compound as a yellow oil (3.5 g).

Mass Spectrum AP⁺: Found 226 ([*M*-Boc]⁺). C₁₉H₂₃N₃O₂ requires 325.

Description 28

7-(Pyrazin-2-yl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-3-benzazepine

Prepared from Description 27 by a similar procedure to that of Description 6.

Mass Spectrum AP⁺: Found 226 (MH⁺). C₁₄H₁₄N₃ requires 225.

Description 29

5-Isoquinolin-1-yl-4-methyl-4*H*-[1,2,4]triazole-3-thiol

- Hydroxybenzotriazole (0.078g), 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (0.11g) and triethylamine were added successively to a cooled solution (0°C) of 4-methyl-3-thiosemicarbazide (0.061g) and 1-isoquinoline carboxylic acid (0.10g) in dimethylformamide (3ml). Following addition the cooling bath was removed

- and the mixture was stirred at room temperature over night and then the reaction mixture was evaporated to dryness. To the residue was added sodium hydroxide solution (0.5 M, 5ml) and the mixture was stirred at 80°C for 3 h. The mixture was cooled to room temperature and the pH adjusted to pH 6 using hydrochloric acid solution (2M) and the resulting precipitate was filtered and dried *in vacuo* to give the title compound (0.11g, 78%) as an off-white solid.

Mass Spectrum AP^+ : Found 243 ($[MH]^+$). $C_{12}H_{10}N_4S$ requires 242.

- 1H NMR (DMSO) δ : 3.65 (3H, s), 7.78 (1H, t, $J = 8$ Hz), 7.89 (1H, t, $J = 8$ Hz), 8.08 (1H, d, $J = 6$ Hz), 8.13 (1H, d, $J = 8$ Hz), 8.51 (1H, d, $J = 8$ Hz), 8.71 (1H, d, $J = 6$ Hz), 14.21 (1H, br s).

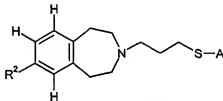
Examples

15




















The Compounds of Examples tabulated below were all prepared using the following general method:-



















- A mixture of the appropriate chloropropyl benzazepine from Description 20 (1.57 mmol), appropriate thiol (1.57 mmol) and lithium hydroxide (1.57 mmol) in anhydrous DMF (5 ml) were heated at 100°C for 2 h. The cooled reaction mixture was partitioned between water and ethyl acetate, the organic layer dried (Na_2SO_4) and evaporated *in vacuo*. Chromatography on silica gel using 30 - 100% ethyl acetate in hexane gradient elution gave the title compounds.
























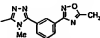

25
















































Example	R ²	A	Data
1	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (AP^+): Found 473 (MH^+). $C_{23}H_{28}N_4O_3S_2$ requires 472. 1H NMR δ : 1.95 - 2.10 (2H, m), 2.60 - 2.70 (6H, m), 2.85 - 2.95 (4H, m), 3.12 (3H, s), 3.30 - 3.34 (2H, t, $J = 7.2$ Hz), 3.60 (3H, s), 6.95 - 7.05 (2H, m), 7.05 - 7.15 (1H, m), 7.45 - 7.55 (3H, m), 7.60 - 7.70 (2H, m).
2	NC-		Mass spectrum (AP^+): Found 404 (MH^+). $C_{23}H_{25}N_5S$ requires 403.
3			Mass spectrum (AP^+): Found 461 (MH^+). $C_{25}H_{28}N_6OS$ requires 460.

4	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 457 (MH ⁺). C ₂₃ H ₂₈ N ₄ O ₂ S ₂ requires 456.
5	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 518 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₃₁ N ₃ O ₂ S ₂ requires 517.
6	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 508 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₂₉ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 507.
7	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 463 (MH ⁺). C ₂₁ H ₂₆ N ₄ O ₄ S ₂ requires 462.
8	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 479 (MH ⁺). C ₂₁ H ₂₆ N ₄ O ₃ S ₃ requires 478.
9	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 474 (MH ⁺). C ₂₂ H ₂₇ N ₅ O ₃ S ₂ requires 473.
10	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 529 (MH ⁺). C ₂₇ H ₃₆ N ₄ O ₃ S ₂ requires 528.
11	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 478 (MH ⁺). C ₂₁ H ₂₇ N ₅ O ₄ S ₂ requires 477.
12	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 541 (MH ⁺). C ₂₃ H ₂₆ ³⁵ Cl ₂ N ₄ O ₃ S ₂ requires 540.
13	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 524 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₂₉ N ₅ O ₃ S ₂ requires 523.
14	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 491 (MH ⁺). C ₂₂ H ₂₇ FN ₄ O ₃ S ₂ requires 490.
15	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 541 (MH ⁺). C ₂₄ H ₂₇ F ₃ N ₄ O ₃ S ₂ requires 540.
16	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 506 (MH ⁺). C ₂₄ H ₂₈ ³⁵ ClN ₃ O ₃ S ₂ requires 505.
17	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 460 (MH ⁺). C ₂₂ H ₂₅ N ₃ O ₄ S ₂ requires 459.
18	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 433 (MH ⁺). C ₂₁ H ₂₄ N ₂ O ₄ S ₂ requires 432.
19	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 397 (MH ⁺). C ₁₇ H ₂₄ N ₄ O ₃ S ₂ requires 396.
20	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 396 (MH ⁺). C ₁₈ H ₂₅ N ₃ O ₃ S ₂ requires 395.
21	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 410 (MH ⁺). C ₂₀ H ₂₇ NO ₄ S ₂ requires 409.
22	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 534 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₃₁ N ₃ O ₃ S ₂ requires 533.


































23	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 432 (MH ⁺). C ₂₁ H ₂₃ N ₃ O ₃ S ₂ requires 431.
24	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 393 (MH ⁺). C ₁₉ H ₂₄ N ₂ O ₃ S ₂ requires 392.
25	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 394 (MH ⁺). C ₁₈ H ₂₃ N ₃ O ₃ S ₂ requires 393.
26	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 443 (MH ⁺). C ₂₃ H ₂₆ N ₂ O ₃ S ₂ requires 442.
27	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 462 (MH ⁺). C ₁₉ H ₂₂ F ₃ N ₃ O ₃ S ₂ requires 461.
28	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 470 (MH ⁺). C ₂₄ H ₂₇ N ₃ O ₃ S ₂ requires 469.
29	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 470 (MH ⁺). C ₂₄ H ₂₇ N ₃ O ₃ S ₂ requires 469.
30	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 555 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₀ N ₆ O ₄ S ₂ requires 554.
31	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 498 (MH ⁺). C ₂₄ H ₂₇ N ₃ O ₃ S ₂ requires 497.
32	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 538 (MH ⁺). C ₂₇ H ₃₁ N ₅ O ₃ S ₂ requires 537.
33	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 524 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₂₉ N ₅ O ₃ S ₂ requires 523.
34	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 541 (MH ⁺). C ₂₄ H ₂₇ F ₃ N ₄ O ₃ S ₂ requires 540.
35	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 490 (MH ⁺). C ₂₄ H ₂₈ FN ₃ O ₃ S ₂ requires 489.
36	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 548 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₃ N ₃ O ₃ S ₂ requires 547.
37	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 491 (MH ⁺). C ₂₃ H ₂₇ FN ₄ O ₃ S ₂ requires 490.
38	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 491 (MH ⁺). C ₂₃ H ₂₇ FN ₄ O ₃ S ₂ requires 490.
39	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 509 (MH ⁺). C ₂₃ H ₂₆ F ₂ N ₄ O ₃ S ₂ requires 508.
40	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 479 (MH ⁺). C ₂₃ H ₃₄ N ₄ O ₃ S ₂ requires 478.

41	MeSO ₂ ⁻		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 475 (MH ⁺). C ₂₃ H ₂₇ FN ₄ O ₂ S ₂ requires 474.
42	MeSO ₂ ⁻		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 459 (MH ⁺). C ₂₃ H ₂₆ N ₂ O ₂ S ₃ requires 458.
43	MeSO ₂ ⁻		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 501 (MH ⁺). C ₂₅ H ₂₉ FN ₄ O ₂ S ₂ requires 500.
44	EtSO ₂ ⁻		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 489 (MH ⁺). C ₂₄ H ₂₉ FN ₄ O ₂ S ₂ requires 488.
45	EtSO ₂ ⁻		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 522 (MH ⁺). C ₂₇ H ₃₁ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 521.
46	EtSO ₂ ⁻		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 470 (MH ⁺). C ₂₅ H ₃₁ N ₃ O ₂ S ₂ requires 469.
47			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 530 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₂ FN ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 529.
48			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 563 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₃₄ N ₆ O ₂ S ₂ requires 562.
49			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 573 (MH ⁺). C ₃₂ H ₃₆ N ₄ O ₂ S ₂ requires 572.
50			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 546 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₂ FN ₅ O ₃ S ₂ requires 545.
51			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 579 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₃₄ N ₆ O ₃ S ₂ requires 578.
52			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 475 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₂₇ FN ₆ S requires 474.
53			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 508 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₂₉ N ₇ S requires 507.
54	Me ₂ NSO ₂ ⁻		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 504 (MH ⁺). C ₂₄ H ₃₀ FN ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 503.
55	Me ₂ NSO ₂ ⁻		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 537 (MH ⁺). C ₂₇ H ₃₂ N ₆ O ₂ S ₂ requires 536.
56	MeSO ₂ ⁻		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 508 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₂₉ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 507.
57	EtSO ₂ ⁻		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 553 (MH ⁺). C ₂₇ H ₃₂ N ₆ O ₃ S ₂ requires 552.
58	EtSO ₂ ⁻		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 536 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₃₃ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 535.



































59	EtSO ₂ ⁻		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 515 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₁ FN ₄ O ₂ S ₂ requires 514.
60			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 478 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₂₈ FN ₃ OS requires 477.
61			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 511 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₃₀ N ₆ OS requires 510.
62			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 478 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₂₈ FN ₃ OS requires 477.
63			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 511 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₃₀ N ₆ OS requires 510.
64			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 577 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₆ N ₆ O ₂ S ₂ requires 576.
65			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 544 (MH ⁺). C ₂₇ H ₃₄ FN ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 543.
66	PhSO ₂ ⁻		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 570 (MH ⁺). C ₃₁ H ₃₁ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 569.
67	PhSO ₂ ⁻		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 555 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₂₈ F ₂ N ₄ O ₂ S ₂ requires 554.
68	PhSO ₂ ⁻		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 537 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₂₉ FN ₄ O ₂ S ₂ requires 536.
69			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 534 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₉ N ₅ O ₃ S ₂ requires 533.
70			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 564 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₁ F ₂ N ₅ O ₃ S ₂ requires 563.
71			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 578 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₃ N ₅ O ₃ S ₂ requires 577.
72	MeSO ₂ ⁻		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 496 (MH ⁺). C ₂₅ H ₂₉ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 495.
73	MeSO ₂ ⁻		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 522 (MH ⁺). C ₂₇ H ₃₁ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 521.
74	MeSO ₂ ⁻		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 510 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₁ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 509.
75	MeSO ₂ ⁻		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 496 (MH ⁺). C ₂₅ H ₂₉ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 495.
76	MeSO ₂ ⁻		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 501 (MH ⁺). C ₂₅ H ₂₉ FN ₄ O ₂ S ₂ requires 500.

















77	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 507 (MH ⁺). C ₂₇ H ₃₀ N ₄ O ₂ S ₂ requires 506.
78	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 513 (MH ⁺). C ₂₅ H ₂₈ N ₄ O ₂ S ₃ requires 512.
79	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 510 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₁ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 509.
80	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 497 (MH ⁺). C ₂₅ H ₂₈ N ₄ O ₃ S ₂ requires 496.
81	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 496 (MH ⁺). C ₂₅ H ₂₉ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 495.
82	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 510 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₁ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 509.
83	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 496 (MH ⁺). C ₂₅ H ₂₉ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 495.
84	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 539 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₀ N ₆ O ₃ S ₂ requires 538.
85	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 496 (MH ⁺). C ₂₅ H ₂₉ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 495.
86	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 513 (MH ⁺). C ₂₅ H ₂₈ N ₄ O ₂ S ₂ requires 512.
87	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 514 (MH ⁺). C ₂₄ H ₂₇ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 513.
88	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 471 (MH ⁺). C ₂₄ H ₃₀ N ₄ O ₂ S ₂ requires 470.
89	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 510 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₁ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 509.
90	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 510 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₁ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 509.
91	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 527 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₀ N ₄ O ₂ S ₂ requires 526.
92	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 477 (MH ⁺). C ₂₄ H ₃₆ N ₄ O ₂ S ₂ requires 476.
93	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 510 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₁ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 509.
94	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 536 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₃₃ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 535.

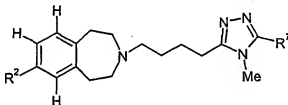
95	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 511 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₀ N ₄ O ₃ S ₂ requires 510.
96	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 511 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₀ N ₄ O ₃ S ₂ requires 510.
97	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 521 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₃₂ N ₄ O ₂ S ₂ requires 520.
98	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 457 (MH ⁺). C ₂₃ H ₂₈ N ₄ O ₂ S ₂ requires 456.
99	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 524 (MH ⁺). C ₂₇ H ₃₃ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 523.
100	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 511 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₀ N ₄ O ₃ S ₂ requires 510.
101	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 488 (MH ⁺). C ₂₅ H ₃₀ FN ₃ O ₂ S ₂ requires 487.
102	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 510 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₁ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 509.
103	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 507 (MH ⁺). C ₂₄ H ₂₈ F ₂ N ₄ O ₂ S ₂ requires 506.
104	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 470 (MH ⁺). C ₂₅ H ₃₁ N ₃ O ₂ S ₂ requires 469.
105	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 552 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₃₃ N ₅ O ₃ S ₂ requires 551.
106	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 527 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₀ N ₄ O ₂ S ₃ requires 526.
107	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 510 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₁ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 509.
108	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 549 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₃₂ N ₆ O ₂ S ₂ requires 548.
109	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 510 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₁ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 509.
110	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 496 (MH ⁺). C ₂₅ H ₂₉ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 495.
111	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 524 (MH ⁺). C ₂₇ H ₃₃ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 523.
112	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 522 (MH ⁺). C ₂₇ H ₃₁ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 521.

113	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 488 (MH ⁺). C ₂₅ H ₃₀ FN ₃ O ₂ S ₂ requires 487.
114			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 558 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₃₆ FN ₃ O ₂ S ₂ requires 557.
115			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 591 (MH ⁺). C ₃₁ H ₃₈ N ₆ O ₂ S ₂ requires 590.
116			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 574 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₁ N ₅ O ₃ S ₂ requires 573.
117			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 527 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₂₇ FN ₄ O ₃ S ₂ requires 526.
118			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 545 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₂₆ F ₂ N ₄ O ₃ S ₂ requires 544.
119			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 560 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₂₉ N ₅ O ₃ S ₂ requires 559.
120	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 524 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₂₉ N ₅ O ₃ S ₂ requires 523.
121			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 527 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₄ N ₆ OS requires 526.
122			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 541 (MH ⁺). C ₃₁ H ₃₆ N ₆ OS requires 540.
123	Et ₃ N-C(=O)-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 529 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₆ N ₆ OS requires 528.
124			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 501 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₃₂ N ₆ OS requires 500.
125			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 478 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₂₈ FN ₃ OS requires 477.
126			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 511 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₃₀ N ₆ OS requires 510.
127			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 525 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₂ N ₆ OS requires 524.
128			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 525 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₂ N ₆ OS requires 524.
129			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 496 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₂₇ F ₂ N ₅ OS requires 495.
130			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 525 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₂ N ₆ OS requires 524.

131			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 496 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₂₇ F ₂ N ₅ OS requires 495.
132			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 499 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₃₀ N ₆ OS requires 498.
133			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 525 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₂ N ₆ OS requires 524.
134			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 500 (MH ⁺). C ₂₇ H ₂₉ N ₇ OS requires 499.
135			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 529 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₂₉ FN ₆ OS requires 528.
136			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 466 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₅ N ₅ OS requires 465.
137			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 543 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₁ FN ₆ OS requires 542.
138			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 485 (MH ⁺). C ₂₇ H ₂₈ N ₆ OS requires 484.
139			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 516 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₂₉ N ₅ OS ₂ requires 515.
140			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 499 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₃₀ N ₆ OS requires 498.
141			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 510 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₁ N ₅ OS requires 509.
142			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 516 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₂₉ N ₅ OS ₂ requires 515.
143			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 540 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₃ N ₇ OS requires 539.
144			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 499 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₃₀ N ₆ OS requires 498.
145			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 485 (MH ⁺). C ₂₇ H ₂₈ N ₆ OS requires 484.
146			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 512 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₂₉ N ₇ OS requires 511.
147			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 500 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₂₉ N ₅ O ₂ S requires 499.

148			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 510 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₁ N ₅ OS requires 509.
149			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 559 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₁ ³⁵ ClN ₆ OS requires 558.
150			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 513 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₃₂ N ₆ OS requires 512.
151			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 500 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₂₉ N ₅ O ₂ S requires 499.
152			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 511 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₃₀ N ₆ OS requires 510.
153			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 511 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₃₀ N ₆ OS requires 510.
154			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 526 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₃₁ N ₇ OS requires 525.
155			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 513 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₃₂ N ₆ OS requires 512.
156			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 499 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₃₀ N ₆ OS requires 498.
157			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 511 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₃₀ N ₆ OS requires 510.
158			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 512 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₂₉ N ₇ OS requires 511.
159			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 489 (MH ⁺). C ₂₇ H ₃₂ N ₆ OS requires 488.
160			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 510 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₁ N ₅ OS requires 509.
161			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 527 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₃₀ N ₆ O ₂ S requires 526.
162			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 500 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₂₉ N ₅ O ₂ S requires 499.
163			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 512 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₂₉ N ₇ OS requires 511.
164			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 511 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₃₀ N ₆ OS requires 510.

165			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 489 (MH ⁺). C ₂₇ H ₃₂ N ₆ OS requires 488.
166			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 544 (MNa ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₁ N ₇ S requires 521.
167			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 544 (MNa ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₁ N ₇ S requires 521.
168			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 525 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₂ N ₆ OS requires 524.
169			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 525 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₂ N ₆ OS requires 524.
170			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 496 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₂₇ F ₂ N ₂ OS requires 495.
171			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 525 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₂ N ₆ OS requires 524.
172			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 537 (MH ⁺). C ₃₁ H ₃₂ N ₆ OS requires 536.



Example 173

- 5 7-(5-Methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-3-{4-[4-methyl-5-(2-methyl-quinolin-6-yl)-4 H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-yl]-butyl}-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine

a) 4-[1,3]Dioxan-2-yl-butyric acid methyl ester

- Methyl 5,5-dimethoxyvalerate (20.0g, 0.114mol), propane-1,3-diol (13g, 0.17mol) and
 0 para-toluene sulphonic acid (2.17g, 0.0114mol) were heated under Dean-Stark conditions
 in toluene (100ml) for 4 h. The mixture was cooled to room temperature and diluted with
 diethyl ether (100ml) and then neutralized with solid sodium bicarbonate. The solid was
 filtered and the filtrate evaporated to give a pale yellow oil (22.3g). A 10g portion of this
 was then purified by silica gel chromatography (eluent 30% EtOAc:hexane) which gave
 5 the title compound as a colourless oil (6.82g).

b) 4-[1,3]Dioxan-2-yl-butyric acid

- 4-[1,3]Dioxan-2-yl-butyric acid methyl ester (6.8g, 0.036mol) was added to a stirred solution of sodium hydroxide (1.87g, 0.047mol) in water (30ml) and methanol (30ml).
- 5 The mixture was stirred for 18 h at room temperature and then the solvent evaporated. The residue was partitioned between ethyl acetate (100ml) and water (100ml) and cooled to 0°C. The mixture was acidified with hydrochloric acid (1M) to pH 2 and the layers separated. The aqueous layer was further extracted with cold ethyl acetate (100ml) and the combined organic layers washed with brine (100ml) and then dried (Na₂SO₄). The
- 10 solvents were evaporated and the crude solid (5.56g) was used in the next step.

c) 4-[1,3]Dioxan-2-yl-N-methyl-butyramide

- To 4-[1,3]dioxan-2-yl-butyric acid (2.55g, 0.015mol) in dichloromethane (200 ml) was added methylamine (2M in THF, 8.1 ml, 0.016mol), 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (3.09g, 0.016mol) and hydroxybenzotriazole (2.16g, 0.016mol) and the mixture stirred at room temperature overnight. The organic layer was washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (200ml) and the aqueous layer extracted with dichloromethane (4 x 50ml). The combined organics were dried (Na₂SO₄) and evaporated to give a colourless oil (3.2g)
- 15
- 20

Mass Spectrum AP⁺: Found 188 ([MH]⁺). C₉H₁₇NO₃ requires 187.

d) 2-Methyl-quinoline-6-carboxylic acid N'-(4-[1,3]dioxan-2-yl-1-methylimino-butyl)-hydrazide

- 4-[1,3]Dioxan-2-yl-N-methyl-butyramide (1g, 5.35mmol) was cooled to -78°C in dry dichloromethane (10ml) under argon and phosphorus oxychloride (0.65ml, 7mmol) was added dropwise. The mixture was warmed to room temperature to give an amber solution which was re-cooled to 0°C. This solution was added dropwise to a suspension of 2-methyl-quinoline-6-carboxylic acid hydrazide (1g, 5mmol) in chloroform (20ml) and the
- 25
- 30
- 35
- 40
- 45
- 50
- 55
- 60
- 65
- 70
- 75
- 80
- 85
- 90
- 95
- 100
- 105
- 110
- 115
- 120
- 125
- 130
- 135
- 140
- 145
- 150
- 155
- 160
- 165
- 170
- 175
- 180
- 185
- 190
- 195
- 200
- 205
- 210
- 215
- 220
- 225
- 230
- 235
- 240
- 245
- 250
- 255
- 260
- 265
- 270
- 275
- 280
- 285
- 290
- 295
- 300
- 305
- 310
- 315
- 320
- 325
- 330
- 335
- 340
- 345
- 350
- 355
- 360
- 365
- 370
- 375
- 380
- 385
- 390
- 395
- 400
- 405
- 410
- 415
- 420
- 425
- 430
- 435
- 440
- 445
- 450
- 455
- 460
- 465
- 470
- 475
- 480
- 485
- 490
- 495
- 500
- 505
- 510
- 515
- 520
- 525
- 530
- 535
- 540
- 545
- 550
- 555
- 560
- 565
- 570
- 575
- 580
- 585
- 590
- 595
- 600
- 605
- 610
- 615
- 620
- 625
- 630
- 635
- 640
- 645
- 650
- 655
- 660
- 665
- 670
- 675
- 680
- 685
- 690
- 695
- 700
- 705
- 710
- 715
- 720
- 725
- 730
- 735
- 740
- 745
- 750
- 755
- 760
- 765
- 770
- 775
- 780
- 785
- 790
- 795
- 800
- 805
- 810
- 815
- 820
- 825
- 830
- 835
- 840
- 845
- 850
- 855
- 860
- 865
- 870
- 875
- 880
- 885
- 890
- 895
- 900
- 905
- 910
- 915
- 920
- 925
- 930
- 935
- 940
- 945
- 950
- 955
- 960
- 965
- 970
- 975
- 980
- 985
- 990
- 995
- 1000
- 1005
- 1010
- 1015
- 1020
- 1025
- 1030
- 1035
- 1040
- 1045
- 1050
- 1055
- 1060
- 1065
- 1070
- 1075
- 1080
- 1085
- 1090
- 1095
- 1100
- 1105
- 1110
- 1115
- 1120
- 1125
- 1130
- 1135
- 1140
- 1145
- 1150
- 1155
- 1160
- 1165
- 1170
- 1175
- 1180
- 1185
- 1190
- 1195
- 1200
- 1205
- 1210
- 1215
- 1220
- 1225
- 1230
- 1235
- 1240
- 1245
- 1250
- 1255
- 1260
- 1265
- 1270
- 1275
- 1280
- 1285
- 1290
- 1295
- 1300
- 1305
- 1310
- 1315
- 1320
- 1325
- 1330
- 1335
- 1340
- 1345
- 1350
- 1355
- 1360
- 1365
- 1370
- 1375
- 1380
- 1385
- 1390
- 1395
- 1400
- 1405
- 1410
- 1415
- 1420
- 1425
- 1430
- 1435
- 1440
- 1445
- 1450
- 1455
- 1460
- 1465
- 1470
- 1475
- 1480
- 1485
- 1490
- 1495
- 1500
- 1505
- 1510
- 1515
- 1520
- 1525
- 1530
- 1535
- 1540
- 1545
- 1550
- 1555
- 1560
- 1565
- 1570
- 1575
- 1580
- 1585
- 1590
- 1595
- 1600
- 1605
- 1610
- 1615
- 1620
- 1625
- 1630
- 1635
- 1640
- 1645
- 1650
- 1655
- 1660
- 1665
- 1670
- 1675
- 1680
- 1685
- 1690
- 1695
- 1700
- 1705
- 1710
- 1715
- 1720
- 1725
- 1730
- 1735
- 1740
- 1745
- 1750
- 1755
- 1760
- 1765
- 1770
- 1775
- 1780
- 1785
- 1790
- 1795
- 1800
- 1805
- 1810
- 1815
- 1820
- 1825
- 1830
- 1835
- 1840
- 1845
- 1850
- 1855
- 1860
- 1865
- 1870
- 1875
- 1880
- 1885
- 1890
- 1895
- 1900
- 1905
- 1910
- 1915
- 1920
- 1925
- 1930
- 1935
- 1940
- 1945
- 1950
- 1955
- 1960
- 1965
- 1970
- 1975
- 1980
- 1985
- 1990
- 1995
- 2000
- 2005
- 2010
- 2015
- 2020
- 2025
- 2030
- 2035
- 2040
- 2045
- 2050
- 2055
- 2060
- 2065
- 2070
- 2075
- 2080
- 2085
- 2090
- 2095
- 2100
- 2105
- 2110
- 2115
- 2120
- 2125
- 2130
- 2135
- 2140
- 2145
- 2150
- 2155
- 2160
- 2165
- 2170
- 2175
- 2180
- 2185
- 2190
- 2195
- 2200
- 2205
- 2210
- 2215
- 2220
- 2225
- 2230
- 2235
- 2240
- 2245
- 2250
- 2255
- 2260
- 2265
- 2270
- 2275
- 2280
- 2285
- 2290
- 2295
- 2300
- 2305
- 2310
- 2315
- 2320
- 2325
- 2330
- 2335
- 2340
- 2345
- 2350
- 2355
- 2360
- 2365
- 2370
- 2375
- 2380
- 2385
- 2390
- 2395
- 2400
- 2405
- 2410
- 2415
- 2420
- 2425
- 2430
- 2435
- 2440
- 2445
- 2450
- 2455
- 2460
- 2465
- 2470
- 2475
- 2480
- 2485
- 2490
- 2495
- 2500
- 2505
- 2510
- 2515
- 2520
- 2525
- 2530
- 2535
- 2540
- 2545
- 2550
- 2555
- 2560
- 2565
- 2570
- 2575
- 2580
- 2585
- 2590
- 2595
- 2600
- 2605
- 2610
- 2615
- 2620
- 2625
- 2630
- 2635
- 2640
- 2645
- 2650
- 2655
- 2660
- 2665
- 2670
- 2675
- 2680
- 2685
- 2690
- 2695
- 2700
- 2705
- 2710
- 2715
- 2720
- 2725
- 2730
- 2735
- 2740
- 2745
- 2750
- 2755
- 2760
- 2765
- 2770
- 2775
- 2780
- 2785
- 2790
- 2795
- 2800
- 2805
- 2810
- 2815
- 2820
- 2825
- 2830
- 2835
- 2840
- 2845
- 2850
- 2855
- 2860
- 2865
- 2870
- 2875
- 2880
- 2885
- 2890
- 2895
- 2900
- 2905
- 2910
- 2915
- 2920
- 2925
- 2930
- 2935
- 2940
- 2945
- 2950
- 2955
- 2960
- 2965
- 2970
- 2975
- 2980
- 2985
- 2990
- 2995
- 3000
- 3005
- 3010
- 3015
- 3020
- 3025
- 3030
- 3035
- 3040
- 3045
- 3050
- 3055
- 3060
- 3065
- 3070
- 3075
- 3080
- 3085
- 3090
- 3095
- 3100
- 3105
- 3110
- 3115
- 3120
- 3125
- 3130
- 3135
- 3140
- 3145
- 3150
- 3155
- 3160
- 3165
- 3170
- 3175
- 3180
- 3185
- 3190
- 3195
- 3200
- 3205
- 3210
- 3215
- 3220
- 3225
- 3230
- 3235
- 3240
- 3245
- 3250
- 3255
- 3260
- 3265
- 3270
- 3275
- 3280
- 3285
- 3290
- 3295
- 3300
- 3305
- 3310
- 3315
- 3320
- 3325
- 3330
- 3335
- 3340
- 3345
- 3350
- 3355
- 3360
- 3365
- 3370
- 3375
- 3380
- 3385
- 3390
- 3395
- 3400
- 3405
- 3410
- 3415
- 3420
- 3425
- 3430
- 3435
- 3440
- 3445
- 3450
- 3455
- 3460
- 3465
- 3470
- 3475
- 3480
- 3485
- 3490
- 3495
- 3500
- 3505
- 3510
- 3515
- 3520
- 3525
- 3530
- 3535
- 3540
- 3545
- 3550
- 3555
- 3560
- 3565
- 3570
- 3575
- 3580
- 3585
- 3590
- 3595
- 3600
- 3605
- 3610
- 3615
- 3620
- 3625
- 3630
- 3635
- 3640
- 3645
- 3650
- 3655
- 3660
- 3665
- 3670
- 3675
- 3680
- 3685
- 3690
- 3695
- 3700
- 3705
- 3710
- 3715
- 3720
- 3725
- 3730
- 3735
- 3740
- 3745
- 3750
- 3755
- 3760
- 3765
- 3770
- 3775
- 3780
- 3785
- 3790
- 3795
- 3800
- 3805
- 3810
- 3815
- 3820
- 3825
- 3830
- 3835
- 3840
- 3845
- 3850
- 3855
- 3860
- 3865
- 3870
- 3875
- 3880
- 3885
- 3890
- 3895
- 3900
- 3905
- 3910
- 3915
- 3920
- 3925
- 3930
- 3935
- 3940
- 3945
- 3950
- 3955
- 3960
- 3965
- 3970
- 3975
- 3980
- 3985
- 3990
- 3995
- 4000
- 4005
- 4010
- 4015
- 4020
- 4025
- 4030
- 4035
- 4040
- 4045
- 4050
- 4055
- 4060
- 4065
- 4070
- 4075
- 4080
- 4085
- 4090
- 4095
- 4100
- 4105
- 4110
- 4115
- 4120
- 4125
- 4130
- 4135
- 4140
- 4145
- 4150
- 4155
- 4160
- 4165
- 4170
- 4175
- 4180
- 4185
- 4190
- 4195
- 4200
- 4205
- 4210
- 4215
- 4220
- 4225
- 4230
- 4235
- 4240
- 4245
- 4250
- 4255
- 4260
- 4265
- 4270
- 4275
- 4280
- 4285
- 4290
- 4295
- 4300
- 4305
- 4310
- 4315
- 4320
- 4325
- 4330
- 4335
- 4340
- 4345
- 4350
- 4355
- 4360
- 4365
- 4370
- 4375
- 4380
- 4385
- 4390
- 4395
- 4400
- 4405
- 4410
- 4415
- 4420
- 4425
- 4430
- 4435
- 4440
- 4445
- 4450
- 4455
- 4460
- 4465
- 4470
- 4475
- 4480
- 4485
- 4490
- 4495
- 4500
- 4505
- 4510
- 4515
- 4520
- 4525
- 4530
- 4535
- 4540
- 4545
- 4550
- 4555
- 4560
- 4565
- 4570
- 4575
- 4580
- 4585
- 4590
- 4595
- 4600
- 4605
- 4610
- 4615
- 4620
- 4625
- 4630
- 4635
- 4640
- 4645
- 4650
- 4655
- 4660
- 4665
- 4670
- 4675
- 4680
- 4685
- 4690
- 4695
- 4700
- 4705
- 4710
- 4715
- 4720
- 4725
- 4730
- 4735
- 4740
- 4745
- 4750
- 4755
- 4760
- 4765
- 4770
- 4775
- 4780
- 4785
- 4790
- 4795
- 4800
- 4805
- 4810
- 4815
- 4820
- 4825
- 4830
- 4835
- 4840
- 4845
- 4850
- 4855
- 4860
- 4865
- 4870
- 4875
- 4880
- 4885
- 4890
- 4895
- 4900
- 4905
- 4910
- 4915
- 4920
- 4925
- 4930
- 4935
- 4940
- 4945
- 4950
- 4955
- 4960
- 4965
- 4970
- 4975
- 4980
- 4985
- 4990
- 4995
- 5000
- 5005
- 5010
- 5015
- 5020
- 5025
- 5030
- 5035
- 5040
- 5045
- 5050
- 5055
- 5060
- 5065
- 5070
- 5075
- 5080
- 5085
- 5090
- 5095
- 5100
- 5105
- 5110
- 5115
- 5120
- 5125
- 5130
- 5135
- 5140
- 5145
- 5150
- 5155
- 5160
- 5165
- 5170
- 5175
- 5180
- 5185
- 5190
- 5195
- 5200
- 5205
- 5210
- 5215
- 5220
- 5225
- 5230
- 5235
- 5240
- 5245
- 5250
- 5255
- 5260
- 5265
- 5270
- 5275
- 5280
- 5285
- 5290
- 5295
- 5300
- 5305
- 5310
- 5315
- 5320
- 5325
- 5330
- 5335
- 5340
- 5345
- 5350
- 5355
- 5360
- 5365
- 5370
- 5375
- 5380
- 5385
- 5390
- 5395
- 5400
- 5405
- 5410
- 5415
- 5420
- 5425
- 5430
- 5435
- 5440
- 5445
- 5450
- 5455
- 5460
- 5465
- 5470
- 5475
- 5480
- 5485
- 5490
- 5495
- 5500
- 5505
- 5510
- 5515
- 5520
- 5525
- 5530
- 5535
- 5540
- 5545
- 5550
- 5555
- 5560
- 5565
- 5570
- 5575
- 5580
- 5585
- 5590
- 5595
- 5600
- 5605
- 5610
- 5615
- 5620
- 5625
- 5630
- 5635
- 5640
- 5645
- 5650
- 5655
- 5660
- 5665
- 5670
- 5675
- 5680
- 5685
- 5690
- 5695
- 5700
- 5705
- 5710
- 5715
- 5720
- 5725
- 5730
- 5735
- 5740
- 5745
- 5750
- 5755
- 5760
- 5765
- 5770
- 5775
- 5780
- 5785
- 5790
- 5795
- 5800
- 5805
- 5810
- 5815
- 5820
- 5825
- 5830
- 5835
- 5840
- 5845
- 5850
- 5855
- 5860
- 5865
- 5870
- 5875
- 5880
- 5885
- 5890
- 5895
- 5900
- 5905
- 5910
- 5915
- 5920
- 5925
- 5930
- 5935
- 5940
- 5945
- 5950
- 5955
- 5960
- 5965
- 5970
- 5975
- 5980
- 5985
- 5990
- 5995
- 6000
- 6005
- 6010
- 6015
- 6020
- 6025
- 6030
- 6035
- 6040
- 6045
- 6050
- 6055
- 6060
- 6065
- 6070
- 6075
- 6080
- 6085
- 6090
- 6095
- 6100
- 6105
- 6110
- 6115
- 6120
- 6125
- 6130
- 6135
- 6140
- 6145
- 6150
- 6155
- 6160
- 6165
- 6170
- 6175
- 6180
- 6185
- 6190
- 6195
- 6200
- 6205
- 6210
- 6215
- 6220
- 6225
- 6230
- 6235
- 6240
- 6245
- 6250
- 6255
- 6260
- 6265
- 6270
- 6275
- 6280
- 6285
- 6290
- 6295
- 6300
- 6305
- 6310
- 6315
- 6320
- 6325
- 6330
- 6335
- 6340
- 6345
- 6350
- 6355
- 6360
- 6365
- 6370
- 6375
- 6380
- 6385
- 6390
- 6395
- 6400
- 6405
- 6410</

Mass Spectrum AP^+ : Found 353 ($[MH]^+$). $C_{20}H_{24}N_4O_2$ requires 352.

f) 4-[4-Methyl-5-(2-methyl-quinolin-6-yl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-yl]-butyraldehyde 6-[5-(3-[1,3]Dioxan-2-yl-propyl)-4-methyl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-yl]-2-methyl-quinoline (109mg, 0.31mmol) was heated in water (20ml) and concentrated sulphuric acid (0.5ml) at 100°C for 3 h. The mixture was cooled to room temperature, basified with solid sodium bicarbonate and extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 50ml). The combined organic portions were dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and evaporated to give the desired compound as an off-white solid (76mg, 84%).

Mass Spectrum AP^+ : Found 295 ($[MH]^+$). $C_{17}H_{18}N_4O$ requires 294.

g) 7-(5-Methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-3-{4-[4-methyl-5-(2-methyl-quinolin-6-yl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-yl]-butyl}-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine 4-[4-Methyl-5-(2-methyl-quinolin-6-yl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-yl]-butyraldehyde (76mg, 0.25mmol) and 7-(5-Methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine (55mg, 0.24mmol) were stirred at room temperature in dichloromethane (5ml) for 30 min. Sodium triacetoxyborohydride (55mg, 0.26mmol) was then added and the mixture stirred over the weekend. The mixture was diluted with dichloromethane (50ml) and washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (30ml). The aqueous was extracted with further dichloromethane (50ml) and the combined organic portions were dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and evaporated to give the desired compound as an off-white solid (26mg).

Mass Spectrum AP^+ : Found 507 ($[MH]^+$). $C_{31}H_{34}N_6O$ requires 506.

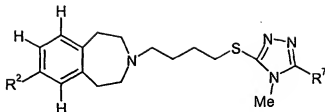
1H NMR ($CDCl_3$) δ : 1.72 (2H, m), 1.93 (2H, m), 2.46 (3H, s), 2.57 (3H, t, $J = 7$ Hz), 2.66 (4H, m), 2.79 (3H, s), 2.91 (6H, m), 3.64 (3H, s), 6.26 (1H, s), 7.16 (1H, d, $J = 8$ Hz), 7.37 (1H, d, $J = 9$ Hz), 7.49 (1H, dd, $J = 2, 8$ Hz), 7.54 (1H, s), 7.89 (1H, dd, $J = 2, 9$ Hz), 8.11 (3H, m).

The following compound was prepared in a similar manner to example 173:

Example 174

3-[4-[5-(4-Fluoro-phenyl)-4-methyl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-yl]-butyl]-7-(5-methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine

Mass spectrum (API^+): Found 460 (MH^+). $C_{27}H_{30}N_5OF$ requires 459.

**Example 175**

7-Ethanesulfonyl-3-[4-(4-methyl-5-quinolin-6-yl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-butyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine

5

a) 6-{5-[3-(5,5-Dimethyl-[1,3]dioxan-2-yl)-propylsulfanyl]-4-methyl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-yl}-quinoline

4-Methyl-5-quinolin-6-yl-4H-[1,2,4]triazole-3-thiol (0.5g, 2.07mmol), 2-(3-Bromo-propyl)-5,5-dimethyl-[1,3]dioxane (0.49g, 2.07mmol) and lithium hydroxide (50mg) were heated in dimethylformamide at 100°C for 3 h. The mixture was cooled and partitioned between water (80 ml) and ethyl acetate (100ml). The layers were separated and the aqueous re-extracted with ethyl acetate (100ml). The combined organic portions were washed with brine (100ml) and then dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered and evaporated to give a colourless oil. Purification by silica gel chromatography (eluent EtOAc - 10% MeOH:EtOAc) which gave the title compound as a colourless solid (0.53g, 65%).

15

Mass Spectrum AP⁺: Found 399 ([MH]⁺). C₂₁H₂₆N₄SO₂ requires 398.

b) 4-(4-Methyl-5-quinolin-6-yl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-butyraldehyde

6-{5-[3-(5,5-Dimethyl-[1,3]dioxan-2-yl)-propylsulfanyl]-4-methyl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-yl}-quinoline (0.51g, 1.28mmol) was heated in water (30ml) and sulphuric acid (1.92mmol) at 100°C for 3 h. The mixture was cooled and basified with sodium carbonate. The aqueous mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 50ml) and the combined organic portions were dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered and evaporated to give the title compound as a colourless oil (0.38g, 95%).

25

Mass Spectrum AP⁺: Found 313 ([MH]⁺). C₁₆H₁₆N₄SO requires 312.

c) 7-Ethanesulfonyl-3-[4-(4-methyl-5-quinolin-6-yl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-butyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine

30

4-(4-Methyl-5-quinolin-6-yl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-butyraldehyde (0.1g, 0.32mmol) and 7-Ethanesulfonyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine (0.11g, 0.45mmol) were stirred at room temperature in dichloromethane (4ml) for 20 min. Sodium triacetoxyborohydride (71mg, 0.34mmol) was then added and the mixture stirred overnight. The mixture was diluted with dichloromethane (50ml) and washed with

35

saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (30ml). The aqueous was extracted with further dichloromethane (50ml) and the combined organic portions were dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and evaporated to give a yellow oil. Purification by silica gel chromatography (eluent 10% MeOH:EtOAc) which gave the title compound as a colourless oil (35mg, 21%).

5

Mass Spectrum AP^+ : Found 536 ($[\text{MH}]^+$). $\text{C}_{28}\text{H}_{33}\text{N}_5\text{S}_2\text{O}_2$ requires 535.

^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ : 1.28 (3H, t, $J = 7$ Hz), 1.71 (2H, m), 1.90 (2H, m), 2.54 (2H, t, $J = 7$ Hz), 2.65 (4H, m), 2.99 (4H, m), 3.10 (2H, t, 7 Hz), 3.37 (2H, t, $J = 7$ Hz), 3.69 (3H, s), 7.26 (1H, d, $J = 8$ Hz), 7.50 (1H, m), 7.61 (1H, s), 7.64 (1H, d, $J = 8$ Hz), 7.97 (1H, d, $J = 8$ Hz), 8.16 (1H, s), 8.24 (2H, d, $J = 9$ Hz), 9.00 (1H, m).

10

The following compounds were prepared in a similar manner to Description 175:

15

Example 176

7-(5-Methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-3-[4-(4-methyl-5-quinolin-6-yl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-butyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine

20

Mass Spectrum AP^+ : Found 525 ($[\text{MH}]^+$). $\text{C}_{30}\text{H}_{32}\text{N}_6\text{SO}$ requires 524.

Example 177

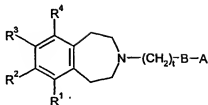
7-(3-Methyl-isoxazol-5-yl)-3-[4-(4-methyl-5-quinolin-6-yl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-butyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine

25

Mass Spectrum AP^+ : Found 525 ($[\text{MH}]^+$). $\text{C}_{30}\text{H}_{32}\text{N}_6\text{SO}$ requires 524.

CLAIMS

1. A compound of formula (I):



Formula (I)

- 5 wherein:

R^2 and R^3 independently represent:

- a hydrogen or halogen atom; a hydroxy, cyano, nitro, oxime, C_{1-4} alkyl, C_{1-4} alkoxy, aryl C_{1-4} alkoxy, C_{1-4} alkylthio, C_{1-4} alkoxy C_{1-4} alkyl, C_{3-6} cycloalkyl C_{1-4} alkoxy, C_{1-4} alkanoyl, C_{1-4} alkoxycarbonyl, C_{1-4} alkylsulfonyl, C_{1-4} alkylsulfonyloxy, C_{1-4} alkylsulfonyl C_{1-4} alkyl, arylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyloxy, arylsulfonyl C_{1-4} alkyl, C_{1-4} alkylsulfonylamido, C_{1-4} alkylamido, C_{1-4} alkylsulfonylamido C_{1-4} alkyl, C_{1-4} alkylamido C_{1-4} alkyl, arylsulfonylamido, arylcarboxamido, arylsulfonylamido C_{1-4} alkyl, arylcarboxamido C_{1-4} alkyl, aryl, aryl C_{1-4} alkyl, or aryl C_{1-4} alkanoyl group;
- 15 a group $R^5OCO(CH_2)_p$, $R^5CON(R^6)(CH_2)_p$, $R^5R^6NCO(CH_2)_p$ or $R^5R^6NSO_2(CH_2)_p$, in which p represents zero or an integer from 1 to 4, and each of R^5 and R^6 independently represents a hydrogen atom or a C_{1-4} alkyl group, or R^5CONR^6 or R^5R^6N together form a 4-, 5-, 6- or 7-membered azacyclic group optionally containing one additional O, N or S atom in the azacycle and having 3-8 carbon atoms; or
- 20 a group Ar^3-Z , wherein Ar^3 represents an optionally substituted phenyl ring or an optionally substituted 5- or 6- membered aromatic heterocyclic ring and Z represents a bond, O, S, SO_2 , or CH_2 ;

- R^1 and R^4 independently represent H, F, Cl, Br, C_{1-2} alkyl, C_{1-4} alkoxy, OH, CN, or
- 25 NO_2 ;

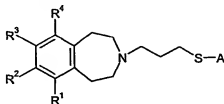
B represents a sulfur atom or a $-CH_2-$ group; and

A represents an optionally substituted 5- or 6- membered aromatic heterocyclic ring, or an optionally substituted bicyclic heterocyclic ring system in which at least the ring bound to the group B in Formula (I) is aromatic;

- 30

or a salt thereof.

2. A compound of formula (IA) or a salt thereof:



Formula (IA)

5 wherein R^1 to R^4 and A are as defined in claim 1.

3. A compound or salt as claimed in claim 1 or claim 2 wherein A is selected from one of the groups (i), (ii) or (iii):



(i)



(ii)



(iii)

10 wherein:

X^1 and X^2 are independently N or CR⁸, and X^3 is NR⁸, O or S;

Y^1 and Y^3 are independently N or CR⁹, and Y^2 is NR⁹, O or S;

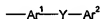
15 Z^1 is NR¹⁰, O or S, and Z^2 and Z^3 are independently N or CR¹⁰;

and wherein:

R^7 is H, a halogen atom, OH, cyano, nitro, C₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₄alkoxy, C₁₋₄alkylenedioxy, C₁₋₄alkanoyl, or C₁₋₄alkylsulfonyl, an optionally substituted 3-, 4-, 5- or 6-membered cycloalkyl ring, or a group of the formula (a), (b), (c) or (d):



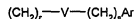
(a)



(b)



(c)



(d)

in which:

25 Ar represents an optionally substituted phenyl ring or an optionally substituted 5- or 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic ring; or an optionally substituted bicyclic ring system,

Ar¹ and Ar² each independently represent an optionally substituted phenyl ring or an optionally substituted 5- or 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic ring, and Y represents a bond, -NHCO-, -CONH-, -CH₂-, or -(CH₂)_mY^A(CH₂)_n-, wherein Y^A represents O, S, SO₂, or CO and m and n each represent zero or 1 such that the sum of m+n is zero or 1,

30 r and s independently represent an integer from zero to 3 such that the sum of r and s is equal to an integer from 1 to 4, and V represents a bond, O or S; and

R⁹ is H, a halogen atom, OH, cyano, nitro, C₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₄alkoxy, C₁₋₄alkylenedioxy, C₁₋₄alkanoyl, or C₁₋₄alkylsulfonyl, an optionally substituted 3-, 4-, 5- or 6-membered cycloalkyl ring, or a group of the formula (a), (b), (c) or (d) as defined herein, provided that R⁹ is not a halogen atom, OH, cyano, nitro, C₁₋₄alkoxy or C₁₋₄alkylenedioxy when R⁹ is linked to N;

or R⁹ together with R⁷ and the intervening atoms of the 5-membered heterocyclic ring illustrated in groups (i), (ii) or (iii) form part of an optionally substituted 5-, 6-, or 7-membered carbocyclic or heterocyclic ring;

and wherein:

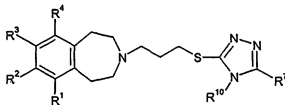
- 5 R⁸ is H, OH or C₁₋₂alkyl, provided that R⁸ is H or C₁₋₂alkyl when R⁸ is linked to N;

R¹⁰ is H, OH, C₁₋₆alkyl, hydroxy-substituted C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₂alkoxyC₁₋₄alkyl, phenylC₁₋₄alkyl, a 3-, 4-, 5- or 6-membered cycloalkyl ring, or phenyl; wherein in phenyl, phenylC₁₋₄alkyl or cycloalkyl the ring is optionally substituted by one or two
10 fluoro or C₁alkyl groups; and provided that R¹⁰ is not OH when R¹⁰ is linked to N.

4. A compound or salt as claimed in claim 3 wherein in the groups (i), (ii) or (iii) one or both of X¹/X²/X³ and Y¹/Y²/Y³ are or contain a ring heteroatom.

- 15 5. A compound or salt as claimed in claim 3 or 4 wherein:
X¹ and X² are independently N or CR⁸, and X³ is NR⁸;
Y¹ and Y³ are independently N or CR⁹, and Y² is NR⁹; and
Z¹ is NR¹⁰, and Z² and Z³ are independently N.

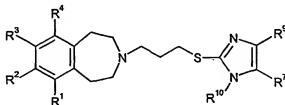
- 20 6. A compound of formula (IB) or a salt thereof:



Formula (IB)

- 25 wherein R¹ to R⁴ are as defined in claim 1 and R⁷ and R¹⁰ are as defined in claim 3.

7. A compound of formula (IC) or a salt thereof:

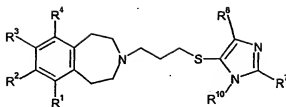


Formula (IC)

30

wherein R¹ to R⁴ are as defined in claim 1 and R⁷, R⁹ and R¹⁰ are as defined in claim 3.

8. A compound of Formula (ID) or a salt thereof:



Formula (II)

5 wherein R^1 to R^4 are as defined in claim 1 and R^7 , R^8 and R^{10} are as defined in claim 3.

9. A compound or salt as claimed in any one of claims 1 to 8 wherein:
 in any groups of the formula (a), (b), (c) or (d) in R^7 or R^9 , the rings or ring systems Ar,
 Ar^1 or Ar^2 are each independently optionally substituted by one or more substituents
 10 selected from: a halogen atom, or a hydroxy, oxo, cyano, nitro, C_{1-4} alkyl, C_{1-4} alkoxy,
 C_{1-4} alkylenedioxy, C_{1-4} alkanoyl, C_{1-4} alkylsulfonyl, C_{1-4} alkylsulfonyloxy,
 C_{1-4} alkylsulfanyl, C_{1-4} alkylthio, $R^{13}SO_2N(R^{14})$ -, $R^{13}R^{14}NSO_2$ -, $R^{13}R^{14}N$ -,
 $R^{13}R^{14}NCO$ -, or $R^{13}CON(R^{14})$ - group wherein each of R^{13} and R^{14} independently
 15 represents a hydrogen atom or a C_{1-4} alkyl group, or $R^{13}R^{14}$ together form a C_{3-6}
 alkylene chain; and wherein in the rings Ar and Ar^2 any substituents positioned *ortho* to
 one another may optionally be linked to form a 5- or 6- membered ring;

and wherein any 3-, 4-, 5- or 6-membered cycloalkyl ring in R^7 and R^9 is
 independently optionally substituted by one or two F or C_{1-2} alkyl groups or a $R^{15}R^{16}N$ -
 group, wherein each of R^{15} and R^{16} independently represents a hydrogen atom or a C_{1-4}
 20 alkyl group, or $R^{15}R^{16}$ together form a C_{3-6} alkylene chain.

10. A compound or salt as claimed in any one of claims 1 to 9 wherein R^7 is a group
 of the formula (a), (b), (c) or (d), or is an optionally substituted 3-, 4-, 5- or 6-membered
 cycloalkyl ring.

25 11. A compound or salt as claimed in claim 10 wherein R^7 is a group of the formula
 (a) or (b).

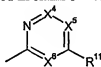
12. A compound or salt as claimed in claim 11 wherein R^7 is a group of the formula
 30 (a) being an optionally substituted phenyl ring or optionally substituted quinolinyl ring
 system; or R^7 is a group of formula (b) wherein Ar^1 is optionally substituted phenyl, Y is
 a bond and Ar^2 is optionally substituted phenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, or a 5-membered
 heterocyclic aromatic ring containing at least one N and one O atom.

35 13. A compound or salt as claimed in any one of claims 1 to 12 wherein R^9 is H or a
 group of the formula (a).

14. A compound or salt as claimed in any one of claims 1 to 13 wherein:
 R^2 represents a substituent selected from: a halogen atom, cyano, acetyl, trifluoromethyl,
 40 pentafluoroethyl, trifluoromethoxy, C_{1-4} alkylsulfonyl, C_{1-4} alkylsulfonyloxy; a

- where $R^5R^6NO_2$ group where each of R^5 and R^6 independently represents a hydrogen atom or a C_{1-4} alkyl group, or R^5R^6N together form a 4-, 5-, 6- or 7-membered azacyclic group optionally containing one additional O, N or S atom in the azacycle and having 3-8 carbon atoms; or a group Ar^3Z , where Z is a bond and Ar^3 is an optionally substituted 5- or 6-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring.

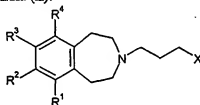
15. A compound or salt as claimed in any one of claims 1 to 14 wherein R^1 , R^3 , and R^4 are all H.
- 10 16. A compound or salt as claimed in claim 1 wherein A is group (iv):



(iv)

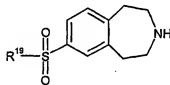
- where R^{11} is as defined for R^7 in claim 3; X^4 is CR^{12a} or N, X^5 is CR^{12b} or N, and X^6 is CR^{12c} or N provided that both X^4 and X^5 are not N;
and wherein $R^{12a,b,c}$, independently of each other, are H, a halogen atom, or a hydroxy, oxo, cyano, nitro, C_{1-4} alkyl, C_{1-4} alkoxy, C_{1-4} alkylenedioxy, C_{1-4} alkanoyl, or C_{1-4} alkylsulfonyl group; a group of the formula (a), (b), (c), or (d) as defined in claim 3; or a non-aromatic 3-, 4-, 5-, 6-, or 7-membered heterocyclic or carbocyclic ring optionally substituted by one or two F or C_{1-2} alkyl groups or a $R^{15}R^{16}N$ - group, wherein each of R^{15} and R^{16} independently represents a hydrogen atom or a C_{1-4} alkyl group or $R^{15}R^{16}$ together form a C_{3-6} alkylene chain;
and/or wherein either (a) X^4 and X^5 , or (b) X^5 , R^{11} and the intervening carbon atom, or (c) X^6 , R^{11} and the intervening carbon atom, together form part of an optionally substituted 5-, 6-, or 7-membered carbocyclic or heterocyclic ring.
- 25 17. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound of formula (I) as defined in any one of claims 1 to 16, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.
18. A compound of formula (I) as defined in any one of claims 1 to 16 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof for use as an active therapeutic substance in a mammal.
19. The use of a compound of formula (I) as defined in any one of claims 1 to 16 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof in the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of a condition in a mammal for which modulation of dopamine D_3 receptors is beneficial.
20. The use of a compound of formula (I) as defined in any one of claims 1 to 16 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof in the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of a psychotic condition or substance abuse in a mammal.

21. The use as claimed in claim 21 wherein the psychotic condition is schizophrenia.
22. A method of treating a condition for which modulation of dopamine D₃ receptors is beneficial, which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof an effective amount of a compound of formula (I) as defined in any one of claims 1 to 16 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.
23. A method of treating a psychotic condition or substance abuse which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof an effective amount of a compound of formula (I) as defined in any one of claims 1 to 16 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.
24. A compound of formula (II):

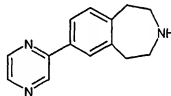


Formula (II)

- wherein R¹ to R⁴ are as defined in any one of claims 1 to 16 provided that R¹ to R⁴ are not all H, and X is a leaving group.
25. A compound of Formula (X) or (XI):



Formula (X)



Formula (XI)

- where R¹⁹ = ethyl, N,N-dimethylamino, pyrrolidin-1-yl, or 1,4-morpholin-4-yl;
or a secondary-amine-protected derivative thereof, or a salt of the compound or derivative.

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization
International Bureau(43) International Publication Date
23 May 2002 (23.05.2002)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number
WO 02/040471 A3(51) International Patent Classification: C07D 403/12,
401/14, 405/14, 409/14, 413/14, 413/12, 405/12, 401/12,
417/12, 403/14, 495/04, 223/16, 403/04, A61K 31/55,
A61P 25/18GlaxoSmithKline, New Frontiers Science Park South,
Third Avenue, Harlow, Essex CM19 5AW (GB).

(21) International Application Number: PCT/EP01/13140

(74) Agent: THOMPSON, Clive, Beresford; GlaxoSmithK-
line, Corporate Intellectual Property (CN9.25.1), 980 Great
West Road, Brentford, Middlesex TW8 9GS (GB).(22) International Filing Date:
12 November 2001 (12.11.2001)(81) Designated States (national): AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU,
AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CO, CR, CU,
CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM,
HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK,
LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX,
MZ, NO, NZ, PH, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK,
SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZA,
ZW.

(25) Filing Language: English

(26) Publication Language: English

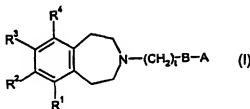
(30) Priority Data:
0027784.8 14 November 2000 (14.11.2000) GB
0031082.1 20 December 2000 (20.12.2000) GB(84) Designated States (regional): ARIPO patent (GH, GM,
KE, LS, MW, MZ, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian
patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European
patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE,
IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE, TR), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF,
CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD,
TG).(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US):
SMITHKLINE BEECHAM P.L.C. [GB/OB]; New
Horizons Court, Brentford, Middlesex TW8 9EP (GB).

(72) Inventors; and

(75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): HADLEY, Michael,
Stewart [GB/OB]; GlaxoSmithKline, New Frontiers
Science Park South, Third Avenue, Harlow, Essex CM19
5AW (GB). LIGHTFOOT, Andrew, P. [GB/OB]; Glaxo-
SmithKline, New Frontiers Science Park South, Third
Avenue, Harlow, Essex CM19 5AW (GB). MACDON-
ALD, Gregor, James [GB/OB]; GlaxoSmithKline, New
Frontiers Science Park South, Third Avenue, Harlow,
Essex CM19 5AW (GB). STEMP, Geoffrey [GB/OB];

Published:

— with international search report

(88) Date of publication of the international search report:
22 August 2002For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guid-
ance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the begin-
ning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.(54) Title: TETRAHYDROBENZAZEPINE DERIVATIVES USEFUL AS MODULATORS OF DOPAMINE D3 RECEPTORS
(ANTIPSYCHOTIC AGENTS)(57) Abstract: The invention provides compounds of formula
(I), wherein R¹-R⁴, A, B and t are as defined in claim 1. The
compounds are modulators of dopamine D₃ receptors and
have potential in the treatment of psychotic conditions (e.g.
schizophrenia) or substance abuse.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

 Intern. Application No.
 PC 01/13140

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

 IPC 7 C07D403/12 C07D401/14 C07D405/14 C07D409/14 C07D413/14
 C07D413/12 C07D405/12 C07D401/12 C07D417/12 C07D483/14
 C07D495/04 C07D223/16 C07D403/04 A61K31/55 A61P25/18

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

IPC 7 C07D

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the International search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

EPO-Internal, WPI Data, PAJ, BEILSTEIN Data, CHEM ABS Data

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
Y	AUSTIN N E ET AL: "Novel 2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepines with high affinity and selectivity for the dopamine D3 receptor" BIOORGANIC & MEDICINAL CHEMISTRY LETTERS, OXFORD, GB, [Online] vol. 10, no. 22, 20 November 2000 (2000-11-20), pages 2553-2555, XP004224262 ISSN: 0960-894X cited in the application * available online (www.sciencedirect.com) on 31.10.00 * the whole document --- -/--	1-6, 9-15, 17-23

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.☒ Patent family members are listed in annex.

* Special categories of cited documents:

"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance

"E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date

"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)

"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means

"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art

"Z" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

26 February 2002

Date of mailing of the international search report

16.05.02

Name and mailing address of the ISA

 European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentkanal 2
 NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk
 Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl,
 Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Johnson, C

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Inter. d Application No

PCT/EP 01/13140,

C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
Y	WO 00 42036 A (NEUMANN SCHULTZ BARBARA ; BASF AG (DE); UNGER LILIANE (DE); BLUMBAC) 20 July 2000 (2000-07-20) cited in the application claims ---	1-6, 9-15, 17-23
A	WO 00 21951 A (JOHNSON CHRISTOPHER NORBERT ; VONG ANTONIO KUOK KEONG (GB); STENG G) 20 April 2000 (2000-04-20) cited in the application claim 1 ---	1-23
A	US 4 352 754 A (WEINSTOCK JOSEPH) 5 October 1982 (1982-10-05) column 1, line 48 -column 2, line 4 ---	1-23
A	US 4 233 217 A (SHETTY BOLA V) 11 November 1980 (1980-11-11) column 1, line 16 -column 2, line 28 -----	1-23

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.
PCT/EP 01/13140

Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)

This International Search Report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1. ☒ Claims Nos.:
because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:
Although claims 22,23 are directed to a method of treatment of the human/animal body, the search has been carried out and based on the alleged effects of the compound/composition.
2. ☐ Claims Nos.:
because they relate to parts of the International Application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful International Search can be carried out, specifically:
3. ☐ Claims Nos.:
because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this International application, as follows:

see additional sheet

1. ☐ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers all searchable claims.
2. ☐ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
3. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4. ☒ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this International Search Report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

1 - 23

Remark on Protest

- ☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.
- ☐ No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/ISA/ 210

This International Searching Authority found multiple (groups of) inventions in this international application, as follows:

1. Claims: 1-23

Compounds of formula (I), their pharmaceutical compositions and uses.

2. Claims: 24 (part), 25

Intermediates of formula (II) wherein the 7-substituent is as defined in claim 25, intermediates of formulae (X) and (XI).

3. Claim : 24 (part)

Intermediates of formula (II) wherein the 7-substituent is other than that defined in claim 25.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No

PCT/JP 01/13140

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 0042036	A	20-07-2000	
		AU 2289700 A	01-08-2000
		AU 2436700 A	01-08-2000
		AU 2541200 A	01-08-2000
		BG 105783 A	29-03-2002
		BG 105784 A	28-02-2002
		BR 0007500 A	23-10-2001
		BR 0007504 A	02-10-2001
		CN 1345319 T	17-04-2002
		CN 1345318 T	17-04-2002
		CZ 20012550 A3	13-02-2002
		CZ 20012551 A3	13-03-2002
		WO 0042038 A1	20-07-2000
		WO 0042037 A1	20-07-2000
		WO 0042036 A1	20-07-2000
		EP 1140907 A1	10-10-2001
		EP 1140908 A1	10-10-2001
		EP 1144405 A1	17-10-2001
		NO 20013443 A	12-07-2001
		NO 20013444 A	11-07-2001
		TR 200102026 T2	21-12-2001
WO 0021951	A	20-04-2000	
		AU 1038100 A	01-05-2000
		BG 105467 A	30-11-2001
		BR 9914370 A	27-11-2001
		CN 1329609 T	02-01-2002
		CZ 20011270 A3	12-09-2001
		WO 0021951 A1	20-04-2000
		EP 1119563 A1	01-08-2001
		NO 20011745 A	06-06-2001
		SK 4782001 A3	06-11-2001
		TR 200101025 T2	21-09-2001
US 4352754	A	05-10-1982	
		US 4255422 A	10-03-1981
		US 4160765 A	10-07-1979
		US 4359464 A	16-11-1982
		AR 224495 A1	15-12-1981
		AT 362379 B	11-05-1981
		AT 816377 A	15-10-1980
		AU 509754 B2	22-05-1980
		AU 3062677 A	24-05-1979
		BE 860774 A1	16-05-1978
		BG 30019 A3	16-03-1981
		CA 1092107 A1	23-12-1980
		CH 635079 A5	15-03-1983
		CS 219333 B2	25-03-1983
		CY 1246 A	31-08-1984
		DD 133563 A5	10-01-1979
		DE 2751258 A1	01-06-1978
		DK 500477 A ,B,	18-05-1978
		DK 508681 A ,B,	17-11-1981
		ES 464044 A1	01-08-1978
		FI 773448 A ,B,	18-05-1978
		FI 834519 A ,B,	09-12-1983
		FR 2371430 A1	16-06-1978
		GB 1595503 A	12-08-1981
		GB 1595502 A	12-08-1981
		HK 93086 A	12-12-1986
		HU 176709 B	28-04-1981

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

In Application No

PCT/EP 01/13140

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
US 4352754	A	IE 46087 B1	23-02-1983
		IE 46088 B1	23-02-1983
		IL 53377 A	30-09-1982
		IN 150172 A1	07-04-1982
		IT 1126216 B	14-05-1986
		JP 1423995 C	15-02-1988
		JP 53063335 A	06-06-1978
		JP 62025658 B	04-06-1987
		JP 1515937 C	24-08-1989
		JP 62155218 A	10-07-1987
		JP 63066808 B	22-12-1988
		JP 1364046 C	09-02-1987
		JP 58113153 A	05-07-1983
		JP 61025697 B	17-06-1986
		LU 78513 A1	20-03-1978
		MX 4682 E	28-07-1982
		MY 38285 A	31-12-1985
		NL 7712567 A ,B,	19-05-1978
		NO 773901 A ,B,	19-05-1978
		PH 13611 A	05-08-1980
		PH 14740 A	20-11-1981
		PL 202177 A1	25-09-1978
		PT 67260 A ,B	01-12-1977
		RO 72905 A1	04-11-1981
US 4233217	A	11-11-1980	
		US 4210749 A	01-07-1980
		CA 974989 A1	23-09-1975
		GB 1268243 A	22-03-1972

CORRECTED VERSION

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization
International Bureau(43) International Publication Date
23 May 2002 (23.05.2002)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number
WO 02/040471 A3(51) International Patent Classification⁷: C07D 403/12,
401/14, 405/14, 409/14, 413/14, 405/12, 401/12,
417/12, 403/14, 495/04, 223/16, 403/04, A61K 31/55,
A61P 25/18

(21) International Application Number: PCT/EP01/13140

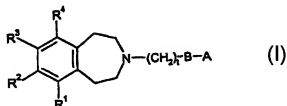
(22) International Filing Date:
12 November 2001 (12.11.2001)

(25) Filing Language: English

(26) Publication Language: English

(30) Priority Data:
0027784.8 14 November 2000 (14.11.2000) GB
0031082.1 20 December 2000 (20.12.2000) GB(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US):
SMITHKLINE BEECHAM P.L.C. [GB/GB]; 980
Great West Road, Brentford, Middlesex TW8 9GS (GB).

(72) Inventors; and

(75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): HADLEY, Michael,
Stewart [GB/GB]; GlaxoSmithKline, New Frontiers
Science Park South, Third Avenue, Harlow, Essex CM19
5AW (GB). LIGHTFOOT, Andrew, P. [GB/GB]; Glaxo
SmithKline, New Frontiers Science Park South, Third
Avenue, Harlow, Essex CM19 5AW (GB). MACDON-
ALD, Gregor, James [GB/GB]; GlaxoSmithKline, New
Frontiers Science Park South, Third Avenue, Harlow,
Essex CM19 5AW (GB). STEMPE, Geoffrey [GB/GB];
GlaxoSmithKline, New Frontiers Science Park South,
Third Avenue, Harlow, Essex CM19 5AW (GB).(74) Agent: THOMPSON, Clive, Beresford; GlaxoSmithK-
line, Corporate Intellectual Property (CN9.25.1), 980 Great
West Road, Brentford, Middlesex TW8 9GS (GB).(81) Designated States (national): AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU,
AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CO, CR, CU,
CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM,
HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK,
LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX,
MZ, NO, NZ, PH, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK,
SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZA,
ZW.(84) Designated States (regional): ARIPO patent (GH, GM,
KE, LS, MW, MZ, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian
patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European
patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE,
IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE, TR), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF,
CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD,
TG).Published:
— with international search report(88) Date of publication of the international search report:
22 August 2002(48) Date of publication of this corrected version:
31 July 2003(15) Information about Correction:
see PCT Gazette No. 31/2003 of 31 July 2003, Section IIFor two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guid-
ance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the begin-
ning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.(54) Title: TETRAHYDROBENZAZEPINE DERIVATIVES USEFUL AS MODULATORS OF DOPAMINE D₃ RECEPTORS
(ANTIPSYCHOTIC AGENTS)(57) Abstract: The invention
provides compounds of formula (I),
wherein R¹, R⁴, A, B and t are as
defined in claim 1. The compounds
are modulators of dopamine D₃
receptors and have potential in the
treatment of psychotic conditions (e.g.
schizophrenia) or substance abuse.

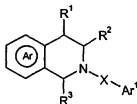
TETRAHYDROBENZAZEPINE DERIVATIVES USEFUL AS MODULATORS OF DOPAMINE D₃ RECEPTORS (ANTIPSYCHOTIC AGENTS)

- 5 The present invention relates to novel tetrahydrobenzazepine derivatives, processes for their preparation, intermediates used in these processes, pharmaceutical compositions containing them and their use in therapy, as modulators of dopamine D₃ receptors, in particular as antipsychotic agents.


Background to the Invention

10

US Patent No. 5,294,621 describes tetrahydropyridine derivatives of the formula:



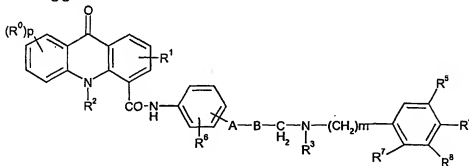
15

wherein  is an optionally substituted thienyl or optionally substituted phenyl ring; R¹, R² and R³ are each *inter alia* hydrogen; X is *inter alia* (CH₂)_mNR⁷CO; m is 2-4; and Ar¹ is an optionally substituted heterocyclic ring or an optionally substituted phenyl ring. The compounds are said to be useful as antiarrhythmic agents.

20

EPA 431,580 describes compounds which are said to be dopaminergic agents useful as antipsychotics, antihypertensives, etc. WO 95/10513 describes benzothiophene derivatives and related compounds as estrogen agonists.

EP 0 494 623 A1 (Laboratoires Glaxo) discloses acridine derivatives of the following general formula:



25

where A is O, S, a bond or CH₂NR⁹; B represents an optionally substituted C₁₋₄alkylene chain, m is 1 or 2; R³ is H or alkyl and R⁷ is H or R³ and R⁷ together from a group (CH₂)_n where n is 1 or 2. There are many examples of the chain -A-B-CH₂- including -S(CH₂)₃-. The preferred compounds are tetrahydroisoquinoline acridines. These compounds are disclosed as being capable of sensitizing multidrug-resistant cancer cells

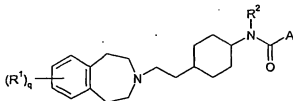
to chemotherapeutic agents. There appears to be no disclosure that these compounds have affinity for dopamine D₃ receptors or could be used in the treatment of psychotic conditions.

- WO 93/03025 (EP 0 596 120), WO 93/13105 (EP 0 596 125) and JP 07070135-A (all Yoshitomi Pharmaceutical Industries) disclose antipsychotic thiophene and condensed thiophene compounds. WO 93/20099 (Ferring) discloses CCK and/or gastrin receptor ligands to treat ulcers, anxiety, psychoses, etc. WO 98/07421 (Ishihara Sangyo Kaisha) discloses cycloalkyl-isoquinolinone and isoindolinone compounds as inhibitors of amino-peptidase N-enzyme.
- WO 97/43262, WO 98/06699, WO 98/49145, WO 98/50363, WO 98/50364, WO98/51671, WO 99/64412, WO 00/24717 (all SmithKline Beecham plc), N.E. Austin et al., *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1999, 9(2), 179-184, G. Stemp et al., *J. Med. Chem.*, 2000, 43(9), 1878-1885, C. Reavill et al., *J. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther.*, 2000, 294(3), 1154-1165, and C.R. Ashby et al., *J. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther.*, 2000, 294(3), 1166-1174, disclose tetrahydroisoquinoline derivatives having affinity for the dopamine D₃ receptor. WO 00/21950 discloses isoindoles having similar activity. Other D₃ modulators are disclosed in WO 96/30333, WO 97/47602, WO 94/03426, WO 94/24129, WO 95/00508, WO 95/16674, WO 95/21165, WO 95/22542, WO 97/00243 (all SmithKline Beecham) and in K.Y. Avenell, et al., *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1999, 9(18), 2715-2720, K.Y. Avenell et al., *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1998, 8(20), 2859-2864, I. Boyfield et al., *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7(15), 1995-1998, D. Bolton et al., *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7(4), 485-488 and I. Boyfield et al., *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7(3), 327-330.

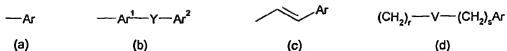
- Other publications disclosing compounds allegedly having affinity for dopamine receptor(s) include: JP 10287631 A2 and EP 773223 A1 (Adir), JP 09291034 A2 (Yoshitomi), WO 97/38989, WO 97/34889, WO 97/31916, US 5633376, WO 96/25411, WO 96/16040, and WO 96/10018 (all Neurogen), WO 97/34889 and US 5414010 (Warner-Lambert), WO 95/29891 and WO 95/08533 (Yamanouchi), and US 5478934 (Jun Yuan).

- WO 00/42036 (BASF) discloses a series of 1,2,4-triazoles linked by various linking groups to tetrahydroisoquinolines or isoindoles, which are disclosed as having affinity for the dopamine D₃ receptor. Other alleged D₃ modulators are disclosed in WO 00/42037, WO 00/42038, DE 19728996 A1, WO 96/02519, WO 97/25324, WO 96/02249, WO 96/02246, WO 96/02520 and DE 4425146 (all BASF).

- WO 00/21951 (SmithKline Beecham) discloses tetrahydrobenzazepine compounds of the following formula:



wherein R¹ and R² are independently H or various substituents; q is 1 or 2; and A represents a group of the formula (a), (b), (c) or (d):



wherein Ar represents an optionally substituted phenyl ring or an optionally substituted 5- or 6- membered aromatic heterocyclic ring; or an optionally substituted bicyclic ring system; Ar¹ and Ar² each independently represent an optionally substituted phenyl ring or an optionally substituted 5- or 6- membered aromatic heterocyclic ring; Y represents a bond or various linking groups; r and s independently represent an integer from zero to 3 such that the sum of r and s is equal to an integer from 1 to 4; and V is a bond, O or S. These compounds were found to exhibit affinity for dopamine D₃ receptor and are disclosed as being useful in the treatment of psychotic conditions, e.g. schizophrenia.

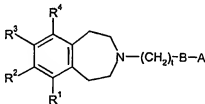
N-(Cyclohexylethyl)-tetrahydrobenzazepine compounds having affinity at the D₃ receptor are also disclosed in N.E. Austin *et al.*, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 2000, 10, 2553-2555.

WO 01/23357 (Amgen) discloses benzazepine derivatives useful in the treatment of diseases, conditions or disorders mediated by integrin derivatives, for example atherosclerosis, restenosis, inflammation, cancer, osteoporosis and the like. There appears to be no disclosure that these compounds have affinity for dopamine D₃ receptors or could be used in the treatment of psychotic conditions.

Summary of the Invention

We have now found a novel class of tetrahydrobenzazepine derivatives which have affinity for dopamine receptors, in particular the dopamine D₃ receptor. These derivatives thus have potential in the treatment of conditions wherein modulation, especially antagonism/inhibition, of the D₃ receptor is beneficial, e.g. as antipsychotic agents.

In a first aspect the present invention provides a compound of formula (I):



Formula (I)

wherein:

R² and R³ independently represent:

a hydrogen or halogen atom; a hydroxy, cyano, nitro, oxime, C₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₄alkoxy, arylC₁₋₄alkoxy, C₁₋₄alkylthio, C₁₋₄alkoxyC₁₋₄alkyl, C₃₋₆cycloalkylC₁₋₄alkoxy, C₁₋₄alkanoyl, C₁₋₄alkoxycarbonyl, C₁₋₄alkylsulfonyl, C₁₋₄alkylsulfonyloxy, C₁₋₄alkylsulfonylC₁₋₄alkyl, arylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyloxy,

arylsulfonylC₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₄alkylsulfonamido, C₁₋₄alkylamido, C₁₋₄alkylsulfonamidoC₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₄alkylamidoC₁₋₄alkyl, arylsulfonamido, arylcarboxamido, arylsulfonamidoC₁₋₄alkyl, arylcarboxamidoC₁₋₄alkyl, aroyl, aroylC₁₋₄alkyl, or arylC₁₋₄alkanoyl group;

- 5 a group R⁵OCO(CH₂)_p, R⁵CON(R⁶)(CH₂)_p, R⁵R⁶NCO(CH₂)_p or R⁵R⁶NSO₂(CH₂)_p, in which p represents zero or an integer from 1 to 4, and (for all four groups) each of R⁵ and R⁶ independently represents a hydrogen atom or a C₁₋₄alkyl group, or (in groups R⁵CON(R⁶)(CH₂)_p, R⁵R⁶NCO(CH₂)_p and R⁵R⁶NSO₂(CH₂)_p) R⁵CONR⁶ or R⁵R⁶N together form a 4-, 5-, 6- or 7-membered azacyclic group optionally
10 containing one additional O, N or S atom in the azacycle and having 3-8 carbon atoms (including the carbon atoms contained in any optional substituent(s) of the azacycle); or a group Ar³-Z, wherein Ar³ represents an optionally substituted phenyl ring or an optionally substituted 5- or 6- membered aromatic heterocyclic ring and Z represents a bond, O, S, SO₂ or CH₂;

- 15 R¹ and R⁴ independently represent H, F, Cl, Br, C₁₋₂alkyl, C₁alkoxy, OH, CN, or NO₂;

B represents a sulfur atom or a -CH₂- group;

t represents 3 or 4; and

- 20 A represents an optionally substituted 5- or 6- membered aromatic heterocyclic ring, or an optionally substituted bicyclic heterocyclic ring system in which at least the ring bound to the group B in Formula (I) is aromatic;

or a salt thereof.

- 25 In the compounds of formula (I) above an "alkyl" group or moiety may be straight or branched, and includes alkyl groups with one, two, three or more fluorine substituents. Alkyl groups which may be employed include methyl, trifluoromethyl, ethyl, pentafluoroethyl, n-propyl, n-butyl, n-pentyl, n-hexyl and any branched isomers thereof such as isopropyl, t-butyl, sec-butyl, isobutyl, and the like.

- A corresponding meaning, including optional fluorine substituents, is intended for "alkoxy", "alkylene", and like terms derived from alkyl. For example, "alkoxy" includes methoxy, trifluoromethoxy, ethoxy, and oxy derivatives of the alkyls listed above. "Alkylsulfonyl" such as C₁₋₄alkylsulfonyl includes methylsulfonyl (methanesulfonyl),
35 ethylsulfonyl, trifluoromethanesulfonyl, pentafluoroethylsulfonyl, and others derived from the alkyls listed above. "Alkylsulfonyloxy" such as C₁₋₄alkylsulfonyloxy includes methanesulfonyloxy (methylsulfonyloxy), trifluoromethanesulfonyloxy, ethanesulfonyloxy, pentafluoroethanesulfonyloxy *et al.*

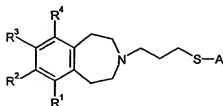
- "Cycloalkyl", for example C₃₋₆cycloalkyl, includes cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl,
40 cyclopentyl and cyclohexyl, and the like.

A halogen atom present in the compounds of formula (I) may be fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine.

Preferably, B represents a sulfur atom.

Preferably, t represents 3.

More preferably, B is a sulfur atom and t is 3 and the invention is a compound of formula (IA) or a salt thereof:



Formula (IA)

Preferably, A represents an optionally substituted 5- or 6- membered aromatic heterocyclic ring, or an optionally substituted bicyclic heterocyclic aromatic ring system (i.e. both rings of the optionally substituted bicyclic heterocyclic ring system are aromatic). It is preferred that A represents an optionally substituted 5- or 6- membered aromatic heterocyclic ring, and more preferred that A is an optionally substituted 5-membered aromatic heterocyclic ring.

It is preferred that A is selected from one of the groups (i), (ii) or (iii):



(i)



(ii)



(iii)

wherein:

X¹ and X² are independently N or CR⁸, and X³ is NR⁸, O or S;

Y¹ and Y³ are independently N or CR⁹, and Y² is NR⁹, O or S;

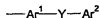
Z¹ is NR¹⁰, O or S, and Z² and Z³ are independently N or CR¹⁰;

and wherein:

R⁷ is H, a halogen atom, OH, cyano, nitro, C₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₄alkoxy, C₁₋₄alkylenedioxy, C₁₋₄alkanoyl, or C₁₋₄alkylsulfonyl, an optionally substituted 3-, 4-, 5- or 6-membered cycloalkyl ring, or a group of the formula (a), (b), (c) or (d):



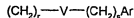
(a)



(b)



(c)



(d)

in which:

Ar represents an optionally substituted phenyl ring or an optionally substituted 5- or 6- membered aromatic heterocyclic ring; or an optionally substituted bicyclic ring system,

Ar¹ and Ar² each independently represent an optionally substituted phenyl ring or an optionally substituted 5- or 6- membered aromatic heterocyclic ring, and Y represents

a bond, -NHCO-, -CONH-, -CH₂-, or -(CH₂)_mY^A(CH₂)_n, wherein Y^A represents O, S, SO₂, or CO and m and n each represent zero or 1 such that the sum of m+n is zero or 1,

r and s independently represent an integer from zero to 3 such that the sum of r and s is equal to an integer from 1 to 4, and V represents a bond, O or S; and

R⁹ is H, a halogen atom, OH, cyano, nitro, C₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₄alkoxy, C₁₋₄alkylenedioxy, C₁₋₄alkanoyl, or C₁₋₄alkylsulfonyl, an optionally substituted 3-, 4-, 5- or 6-membered cycloalkyl ring, or a group of the formula (a), (b), (c) or (d) as defined herein, provided that R⁹ is not a halogen atom, OH, cyano, nitro, C₁₋₄alkoxy or C₁₋₄alkylenedioxy when R⁹ is linked to N;

or R⁹ together with R⁷ and the intervening atoms of the 5-membered heterocyclic ring illustrated in groups (i), (ii) or (iii) form part of an optionally substituted 5-, 6-, or 7-membered carbocyclic or heterocyclic ring; and wherein:

R⁸ is H, OH or C₁₋₂alkyl, provided that R⁸ is H or C₁₋₂alkyl when R⁸ is linked to N;

R¹⁰ is H, OH, C₁₋₆alkyl, hydroxy-substituted C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₂alkoxyC₁₋₄alkyl, phenylC₁₋₄alkyl, a 3-, 4-, 5- or 6-membered cycloalkyl ring, or phenyl; wherein in phenyl, phenylC₁₋₄alkyl or cycloalkyl the ring is optionally substituted by one or two fluoro or C₁alkyl groups; and provided that R¹⁰ is not OH when R¹⁰ is linked to N.

Note that in groups (i), (ii) and (iii) the pendant bond at the left-hand side of each group indicates that there is a direct bond between the group B of Formula (I) and the heterocycle carbon atom located between X^{1,2,3} and Z^{1,2,3}.

In any groups of the formula (a), (b), (c) or (d), the rings or ring systems Ar, Ar¹ or Ar² are preferably each independently optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from: a halogen atom, or a hydroxy, oxo, cyano, nitro, C₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₄alkoxy, C₁₋₄alkylenedioxy, C₁₋₄alkanoyl, C₁₋₄alkylsulfonyl, C₁₋₄alkylsulfonyloxy, C₁₋₄alkylsulfinyl, C₁₋₄alkylthio, R¹³SO₂N(R¹⁴), R¹³R¹⁴NSO₂, R¹³R¹⁴N, R¹³R¹⁴NCO-, or R¹³CON(R¹⁴)- group wherein each of R¹³ and R¹⁴ independently represents a hydrogen atom or a C₁₋₄ alkyl group, or R¹³R¹⁴ together form a C₃₋₆ alkylene chain.

Alternatively or additionally, Ar and Ar² may be independently optionally substituted by one or more 5- or 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic rings, e.g. as defined below, optionally substituted by a C₁₋₂ alkyl or R¹³R¹⁴N- group; wherein R¹³ and R¹⁴ are as defined above.

In the rings Ar and Ar² substituents positioned *ortho* to one another may be linked to form a 5- or 6- membered ring. Preferably in this case Ar and Ar² are optionally substituted phenyl rings, and here linking two *ortho* substituents can for example form a benzoxazinone ring system.

It is preferred that the rings Ar, Ar¹, or Ar² are each independently unsubstituted or substituted by one or more substituents selected from: a halogen atom, or a cyano, C₁₋₂alkyl (e.g. methyl or trifluoromethyl), C₁₋₂alkoxy (e.g. methoxy or trifluoromethoxy), C₁₋₂alkylenedioxy (e.g. methylenedioxy), C₂₋₃alkanoyl (e.g. acetyl), C₂alkanoylamino

(e.g. acetylamino), C₁alkylsulfonyl (e.g. methylsulfonyl or trifluoromethylsulfonyl), C₁alkylsulfonyloxy (e.g. methylsulfonyloxy), C₁alkylaminosulfonyl (e.g. methylaminosulfonyl), C₁alkylsulfonylamino (e.g. methylsulfonylamino), or C₁alkylaminocarbonyl (e.g. methylaminocarbonyl) group.

The 3-, 4-, 5- or 6-membered cycloalkyl ring in e.g. R⁷, R⁹, and (later) R¹¹ can, unless stated otherwise, be independently optionally substituted by one or two F or C₁₋₂ alkyl groups or a R¹⁵R¹⁶N- group; wherein each of R¹⁵ and R¹⁶ independently represents a hydrogen atom or a C₁₋₄ alkyl group, or R¹⁵R¹⁶ together form a C₃₋₆ alkylene chain.

Preferably, R⁷ is not H. It is advantageous that R⁷ is a group of the formula (a), (b), (c) or (d). It is thought that these R⁷ aryl-containing groups help to increase the compound's affinity (binding) to the dopamine D₃ receptor. More advantageously, R⁷ is a group of the formula (a), (b) or (c). Still more advantageously, R⁷ is a group of the formula (a) or (b).

It is preferred that when R⁷ represents a group of formula (a) or (b), and Ar or Ar¹ is optionally substituted phenyl, there is either no substituent present in Ar or Ar¹ *para* to the 5-membered heterocycle illustrated in group (i), (ii) or (iii) or such *para* substituent is a either fluoro or C₁alkyl (e.g. CF₃) group. A fluoro or no substituent at such *para* position is preferred.

R⁷ being an optionally substituted 3-, 4-, 5- or 6-membered cycloalkyl ring, such as an optionally substituted cyclohexyl ring, is also advantageous.

Preferably, R⁹ is *not* taken together with R⁷ and the intervening ring atoms to form part of an optionally substituted 5-, 6-, or 7-membered carbocyclic or heterocyclic ring. More preferably, R⁹ is H or a group of the formula (a) as defined herein, still more preferably H or optionally substituted phenyl.

When R⁷ and/or R⁹, especially R⁷, is/are a group of formula (a), Ar is preferably optionally substituted phenyl, quinolinyl e.g. 2-, 3-, 4-, 5- or 6-quinolinyl, furyl e.g. 2-furyl, thienyl e.g. 2-thienyl, pyridyl e.g. 4-pyridyl, indolyl, pyrazolopyrimidyl e.g. pyrazolo[1,5-a]pyrimidyl, cinnolinyl, benzo[b]furanlyl or pyrrolopyridyl. More preferably, R⁷ is optionally substituted phenyl in particular unsubstituted phenyl or fluorophenyl (e.g. 4-fluorophenyl), or optionally substituted quinolinyl e.g. 6-quinolinyl.

When R⁷ and/or R⁹, especially R⁷, is/are a group of formula (b), Ar¹ is preferably optionally substituted phenyl, and/or Y is preferably a bond, and/or Ar² is preferably optionally substituted phenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, or a 5-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring containing at least one N and one O atom e.g. isoxazolyl, oxazolyl or oxadiazolyl. A highly preferred embodiment is wherein Ar¹ is optionally substituted phenyl (preferably phenyl), Y is a bond, and Ar² is optionally substituted phenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, isoxazolyl, oxazolyl or oxadiazolyl. Most preferably, Ar² is optionally substituted isoxazolyl e.g. isoxazol-5-yl (i.e. 1,2-oxazol-5-yl), oxazolyl e.g. 1,3-oxazol-2-yl, or oxadiazolyl e.g. 1,2,4-oxadiazol-3-yl.

Optimally Ar² has no substituents or is substituted by a C₁alkyl e.g. methyl group, this optional substituent preferably being situated two Ar²-ring-atoms from the connection point to the Ar¹-Y- e.g. Ar¹- group. For example Ar² being 5-methyl-1,2,4-

oxadiazol-3-yl (see e.g. Example 30), 5-methyl-1,3-oxazol-2-yl or 4-methyl-1,3-oxazol-2-yl is preferred.

For a group of formula (b), Ar²-Y- is advantageously joined to the atom of the Ar¹ ring two atoms removed from the Ar¹ atom connected to the main A ring. So, for example, where Ar¹ is optionally substituted phenyl, Ar²-Y- is preferably joined to the *meta*-position of the phenyl ring relative to the main (e.g. triazolyl, imidazolyl) A ring. See for example Example 30 hereinafter.

When R⁷ and/or R⁹, especially R⁷, is/are a group of formula (c), preferred examples of Ar include optionally substituted phenyl.

When R⁷ and/or R⁹, especially R⁷, is/are a group of formula (d), preferably r is 1 or 2, V is a bond, and S is zero; i.e. group (d) is -(CH₂)_r-Ar where r is 1 or 2.

Where R⁹ together with R⁷ and the intervening atoms of the 5-membered heterocyclic ring illustrated in groups (i), (ii) or (iii) form part of an optionally substituted 5-, 6-, or 7-membered carbocyclic or heterocyclic ring, the latter ring is preferably a 6-membered ring, more preferably a phenyl ring (e.g. see Examples 18 and 23).

R¹⁰ is preferably H, C₁₋₄alkyl or cyclopropyl, more preferably H or C₁alkyl (e.g. methyl or trifluoromethyl).

Preferably, X¹ and X² are independently N or CR⁸, and X³ is NR⁸. More preferably, X¹ and X² are independently N and X³ is NR⁸.

Preferably, Y¹ and Y³ are independently N or CR⁹, and Y² is NR⁹.

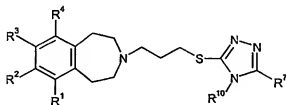
Preferably, Z¹ is NR¹⁰, and Z² and Z³ are independently N.

For A, the tautomeric form shown in group (i) is preferred. In group (i), it is preferred that one or both of X¹ and Y¹ is N.

Without intending to be limited by theory, it is thought that one or both of X¹/X²/X³ and Y¹/Y²/Y³ advantageously are or contain a ring heteroatom, ideally a N atom, for optimum D₃ binding.

It is preferred that A is group (i) and Z¹ = NR¹⁰, in which case R¹⁰ is preferably H, C₁₋₄alkyl or cyclopropyl.

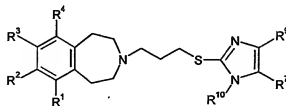
More preferably, B is a sulfur atom, t is 3, A is group (i), X¹ = Y¹ = N and Z¹ is NR¹⁰, so that A is optionally substituted 1,2,4-triazol-3-yl and the invention is a compound of formula (IB) or a salt thereof:



Formula (IB)

Preferably, R⁷ is a group of formula (a), in particular an optionally substituted bicyclic ring or an optionally substituted phenyl ring, more particularly, quinolinyl, e.g. 2-, 3-, 4-, 5-, or 6-quinolinyl.

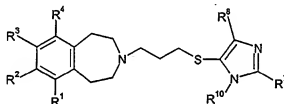
Also preferred is the embodiment wherein B is a sulfur atom, t is 3 and A is group (i), X¹ is N, Y¹ is CR⁹, and Z¹ is NR¹⁰, so that the invention is a compound of formula (IC) or a salt thereof:



Formula (IC)

In Formula (IC) it is further preferred that R⁹ is *not* taken together with R⁷ and the intervening ring atoms to form part of an optionally substituted 5-, 6-, or 7-membered carbocyclic or heterocyclic ring. In this case, A is optionally substituted imidazol-2-yl. Preferably, R⁷ is a group of formula (a), in particular an optionally substituted bicyclic ring or an optionally substituted phenyl ring, more particularly, quinolinyl, e.g. 2-, 3-, 4-, 5-, or 6-quinolinyl.

Also preferred is the embodiment wherein B is a sulfur atom, t is 3 and A is group (i), X¹ is CR⁸, Y¹ is N and Z¹ is NR¹⁰, so that the invention is a compound of Formula (ID) or a salt thereof:



Formula (ID)

In Formula (ID), A is optionally substituted imidazol-4-yl or -5-yl, and preferably R⁸ is H. Preferably, R⁷ is a group of formula (a), in particular an optionally substituted bicyclic ring or an optionally substituted phenyl ring, more particularly, quinolinyl, e.g. 2-, 3-, 4-, 5-, or 6-quinolinyl.

Another embodiment is where A is the following group (iv):



(iv)

where R¹¹ has the same (essential and preferable) definitions as R⁷ herein (but including H in the definitions where H is excluded from R⁷); X⁴ is CR^{12a} or N, X⁵ is CR^{12b} or N, and X⁶ is CR^{12c} or N provided that both X⁴ and X⁵ are not N; and wherein

R^{12a,b,c}, independently of each other, are as defined for the optional substituents of group A described below (i.e. including H as a possibility); and/or wherein either (a) X⁴ and X⁵, or (b) X⁵, R¹¹ and the intervening carbon atom, or (c) X⁶, R¹¹ and the intervening carbon atom, together form part of an optionally substituted 5-, 6-, or 7-membered carbocyclic or heterocyclic ring (e.g. as preferably defined for groups (i), (ii) and (iii) above for when R⁷ and R⁹ together form a ring).

Preferably, R¹¹ has the same definition(s) as R⁷ herein (but including H in the definitions where H is excluded from R⁷); X⁴ is CR^{12a} or N, X⁵ is CR^{12b} or N, and X⁶ is CR^{12c} or N provided that both X⁴ and X⁵ are not N; and wherein R^{12a,b,c}, independently of each other, are as defined for the optional substituents of group A described below (i.e. including H as a possibility) – i.e. there is no extra optionally substituted 5-, 6-, or 7-membered carbocyclic or heterocyclic ring fused to group (iv) above.

Preferably, X⁶ is N, and/or R¹¹ is H or C₁₋₄alkyl (e.g. CF₃).

The following features are preferred or optional for any of the compounds of Formulae (I), (IA), (IB), (IC) or (ID) or salts thereof.

An optionally substituted 5- or 6-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring, as defined for any of the groups A, Ar, Ar¹, Ar² or Ar³ may contain from 1 to 4 heteroatoms, preferably from 1 to 3 heteroatoms, selected from O, N and S. When the ring contains 2-4 heteroatoms, one is preferably selected from O, N and S and the remaining heteroatoms are preferably N. Examples of 5 and 6-membered heterocyclic groups include furyl, thienyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, imidazolyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridyl, triazolyl, triazinyl, pyridazyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazolyl, isothiazolyl, and isoxazolyl. For group A, preferred examples include triazolyl (especially 1,2,4-triazol-3-yl) and imidazolyl (especially imidazol-2-yl). For group Ar, preferred examples include furyl e.g. 2-furyl, thienyl e.g. 2-thienyl, and pyridyl e.g. 4-pyridyl.

Examples of bicyclic ring systems for the group A include bicyclic heteroaromatic ring systems, such as indazolyl, indolyl, benzofuranyl, benzothienyl, benzothiazolyl, benzimidazolyl e.g. benzimidazol-2-yl, benzoxazolyl e.g. benzoxazol-2-yl, benzisoxazolyl, benzisothiazolyl, quinoliny, quinoxoliny, quinazoliny, cinnoliny, or isoquinoliny.

Examples of bicyclic ring systems for Ar (e.g. in groups R⁷, R⁹, etc. in groups (i), (ii) or (iii)) include bicyclic aromatic, e.g. bicyclic heteroaromatic, ring systems such as: naphthyl e.g. 2-naphthyl, indazolyl, indolyl, benzofuranyl, benzothienyl, benzothiazolyl, benzimidazolyl e.g. benzimidazol-2-yl, benzoxazolyl e.g. benzoxazol-2-yl, benzisoxazolyl, benzisothiazolyl, quinoliny e.g. 2-, 3-, 4-, 5- or 6-quinoliny, quinoxoliny, quinazoliny, cinnoliny, isoquinoliny, naphthyridiny, pyrazolopyrimidyl e.g. pyrazolo[1,5-a]pyrimidyl, pyrrolopyridyl e.g. pyrrolo[3,2-b]pyridyl or pyrrolo[3,2-c]pyridyl, thienothiophenyl e.g. thieno[3,2-b]thiophenyl, 1,2-dihydro-2-oxo-quinoliny, 3,4-dihydro-3-oxo-2H-benzoxaziny, or 1,2-dihydro-2-oxo-3H-indolyl. Preferred examples include quinoliny, e.g. 2-, 3-, 4-, 5- or 6-quinoliny or thienopyridine.

The groups/rings/ring systems A or Ar³ may each independently be optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from: a halogen atom, or a hydroxy, oxo, cyano, nitro, C₁₋₄alkoxy, C₁₋₄alkylenedioxy, C₁₋₄alkanoyl, or C₁₋₄alkylsulfonyl group.

- 5 Alternatively, the ring/ring system A may be optionally substituted by one or more groups of the formula (a), (b), (c), or (d) as defined herein; and/or by one or more non-aromatic 3-, 4-, 5-, 6-, or 7-membered heterocyclic or carbocyclic rings optionally substituted by one or two F or C₁₋₂ alkyl groups or a R¹⁵R¹⁶N- group; wherein each of R¹⁵ and R¹⁶ independently represents a hydrogen atom or a C₁₋₄ alkyl group, or
- 10 R¹⁵R¹⁶ together form a C₃₋₆ alkylene chain.

In the group A substituents positioned *ortho* to one another may be linked to form a 5- or 6- membered ring.

- It is preferred that the groups A or Ar³ are each independently optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from: a halogen atom, or a cyano, C₁₋₂alkyl (e.g. methyl or trifluoromethyl), C₁₋₂alkoxy (e.g. methoxy), C₁₋₂alkylenedioxy (e.g. methylenedioxy), C₂₋₃alkanoyl (e.g. acetyl), C₂alkanoylamino (e.g. acetylamino), or C₁alkylsulfonyl (e.g. methylsulfonyl or trifluoromethylsulfonyl) group. It is more preferred that Ar³ is optionally substituted by a C₁alkyl (e.g. methyl) group.
- 15

- 20 When R² and/or R³ represents an arylC₁₋₄alkoxy, arylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyloxy, arylsulfonylC₁₋₄alkyl, arylsulfonylamido, arylcarboxamido, arylsulfonylamidoC₁₋₄alkyl, arylcarboxamidoC₁₋₄alkyl, aryl, arylC₁₋₄alkyl, or arylC₁₋₄alkanoyl group, the aryl moiety may be selected from an optionally substituted phenyl ring or an optionally substituted 5- or 6-membered heterocyclic ring. In the group R² and/or R³ an aryl moiety
- 25 may be optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from hydrogen, halogen, amino, cyano, C₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₄alkylamino, C₁₋₄dialkylamino, C₁₋₄alkylamido, C₁₋₄alkanoyl, or R¹⁷R¹⁸NCO where each of R¹⁷ and R¹⁸ independently represents a hydrogen atom or C₁₋₄alkyl group.

- Where R² and/or R³ independently represent the group R⁵CON(R⁶)(CH₂)_p, R⁵R⁶NCO(CH₂)_p or R⁵R⁶NSO₂(CH₂)_p in which R⁵CONR⁶ or R⁵R⁶N together form a 4-, 5-, 6- or 7-membered azacyclic group, then this can be characterised by: (i) containing one additional O, N or S atom in the azacycle, for example the azacyclic group being 1,4-morpholin-4-yl and/or (ii) having 1-2 optional C₁₋₂alkyl substituents whose carbon atoms are included in the azacyclic group's 3-8 carbon atoms. One, two or more F atoms can
- 30 optionally be included as substituents of the carbon atoms of the heterocycle. The term 'azacyclic group' should be interpreted to cover only stable azacycles such as 1,4-morpholine and piperazine and not for example 1,3-morpholine. Saturated azacycles, in particular piperidinyl, pyrrolidinyl, 1,4-morpholinyl, and including the corresponding α-oxo-azacycles R⁵CONR⁶, are preferred.
- 35

- 40 The substituents R² and R³ may be the same or different. Preferably, R² is other than hydrogen.

It is preferred that R² represents a substituent selected from: a halogen atom, cyano, acetyl, trifluoromethyl, pentafluoroethyl, trifluoromethoxy, C₁₋₄alkylsulfonyl, C₁₋₄alkylsulfonyloxy; a R⁵R⁶NSO₂ group where each of R⁵ and R⁶ independently

represents a hydrogen atom or a C₁₋₄alkyl group, or R⁵R⁶N together form a 4-, 5-, 6- or 7-membered azacyclic group optionally containing one additional O, N or S atom in the azacycle and having 3-8 carbon atoms; or a group Ar³Z, where Z is a bond and Ar³ is an optionally substituted 5- or 6-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring.

5 More preferably, R² represents a substituent selected from: C₁₋₄alkylsulfonyl (e.g. methylsulfonyl, trifluoromethylsulfonyl, or ethylsulfonyl), C₁₋₄alkylsulfonyloxy (e.g. methylsulfonyloxy or trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy); a R⁵R⁶NSO₂ group where each of R⁵ and R⁶ independently represents a hydrogen atom or a C₁₋₄alkyl group (e.g. a N,N-dimethylaminosulfonyl group), or R⁵R⁶N together form a 4-, 5-, 6- or 7-membered
10 azacyclic group optionally containing one additional O, N or S atom in the azacycle and having 3-8 carbon atoms (e.g. a piperidin-1-ylsulfonyl, pyrrolidin-1-ylsulfonyl or 1,4-morpholin-4-ylsulfonyl group); or a group Ar³Z, where Z is a bond and Ar³ is an optionally substituted 5- or 6-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring.

Still more preferably, R² represents a methylsulfonyl, ethylsulfonyl, N,N-dimethylaminosulfonyl, pyrrolidin-1-ylsulfonyl, 1,4-morpholin-4-ylsulfonyl or
15 methylsulfonyloxy group, or R² represents a pyrazin-2-yl, 5-methyl-oxazol-2-yl or 5-methyl-isoxazol-3-yl group.

Preferably, R³ is hydrogen or one of the substituents preferred for R². More preferably, R³ is hydrogen.

20 It is preferred that at least one of R¹ and R⁴ is H, more preferred that both R¹ and R⁴ are H, and most preferred that R¹, R³, and R⁴ are all H.

It will be appreciated that for use in medicine the salts of the compounds of the invention should be pharmaceutically (i.e. physiologically) acceptable. Suitable
25 pharmaceutically acceptable salts will be apparent to those skilled in the art and include for example acid addition salts formed with inorganic acids e.g. hydrochloric, hydrobromic, sulfuric, nitric or phosphoric acid; and organic acids e.g. succinic, maleic, acetic, fumaric, citric, tartaric, benzoic, p-toluenesulfonic, methanesulfonic or naphthalenesulfonic acid. Other non-pharmaceutically acceptable salts eg. oxalates, may
30 be used, for example in the isolation of compounds of the invention and are included within the scope of this invention. Also included within the scope of the invention are solvates, hydrates, complexes and prodrugs of compounds of the invention.

Certain of the compounds of the invention may form acid addition salts with one or more equivalents of the acid. The present invention includes within its scope all
35 possible stoichiometric and non-stoichiometric forms. Certain groups/substituents included in the present invention may be present as isomers. The present invention includes within its scope all such isomers, including racemates, enantiomers and mixtures thereof. When A represents a group (c) the compounds may also exist as geometric isomers around the double bond; all isomers are included though
40 *trans* geometry of the double bond in (c) is preferred.

Preferred compounds have a molecular weight of 800 or less. Still more preferred are compounds having a molecular weight of 600 or less. Generally, and without being limited thereto, such compounds may have higher oral bioavailability, and sometimes

higher solubility and/or brain penetrancy. Molecular weight here refers to that of the unsolvated free base compound, excluding any molecular weight contributed by addition salts, solvent (e.g. water) molecules, prodrug molecular parts cleaved off *in vivo*, etc.

- Certain of the substituted heteroaromatic ring systems included in compounds of formula (I) may exist in one or more tautomeric forms. The present invention includes within its scope all such tautomeric forms, including mixtures. For example, where R⁷, R⁸, R⁹, and/or R¹⁰ is/are OH, in A groups (i), (ii) or (iii) above, the 5-membered ring can be in the keto or enol forms.

- In general, the compounds or salts of the invention should be interpreted as excluding those compounds (if any) which are so chemically unstable, either per se or in water, that they are clearly unsuitable for pharmaceutical use through all administration routes, whether oral, parenteral or otherwise. Such compounds are known to the skilled chemist. Prodrugs or compounds which are stable *ex vivo* and which are convertible in the mammalian (e.g. human) body to the inventive compounds are however included.

Particular compounds and salts according to the invention include those specifically exemplified in Table 1 and Examples 173 to 177 and those specifically exemplified and named hereinafter, for example:-

- 20 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-phenyl-4*H*-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]azepin-7-yl ester;
3-[3-(4-Methyl-5-phenyl-4*H*-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]azepine-7-carbonitrile;
7-(5-Methyl-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-3-yl)-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-phenyl-4*H*-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]azepine;
25 7-Methylsulfonyl-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-phenyl-4*H*-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]azepine;
7-Methylsulfonyl-3-[3-(4,5-diphenyl-1*H*-imidazol-2-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]azepine;
30 7-Methylsulfonyl-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(quinolin-6-yl)-4*H*-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]azepine;
Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(furan-2-yl)-4*H*-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]azepin-7-yl ester;
Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(thiophen-2-yl)-4*H*-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]azepin-7-yl ester;
35 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(pyridin-4-yl)-4*H*-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]azepin-7-yl ester;
Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(4-*tert*-butyl-phenyl)-4*H*-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]azepin-7-yl ester;
40 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(5-methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-4*H*-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]azepin-7-yl ester;
Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(2,4-dichloro-phenyl)-4*H*-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*d*]azepin-7-yl ester;

- Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(quinolin-6-yl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
 5 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(4-trifluoromethyl-phenyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(4-chloro-phenyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(5-phenyl-[1,3,4]oxadiazol-2-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
 10 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(5-(pyridin-4-yl)-[1,3,4]oxadiazol-2-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(benzoxazol-2-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
 15 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(1-methyl-1H-imidazol-2-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(2,5-dimethyl-furan-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
 20 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4,5-diphenyl-1H-imidazol-2-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(1H-benzimidazol-2-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
 25 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(pyridin-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(pyrimidin-2-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(isoquinolin-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
 30 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-trifluoromethyl-pyrimidin-2-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-phenyl-pyrimidin-2-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
 35 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(5-phenyl-pyridazin-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(3-((5-methyl)-1,2,4-oxadiazol-3-yl)phenyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(3-cyanophenyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester; or
 40 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-((2-methyl)-quinolin-5-yl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;

or a salt thereof.

Further particular compounds and salts according to the invention include:-

- Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(quinolin-3-yl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
- 5 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(3-trifluoromethyl-phenyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
- Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(3-methyl-4-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-3H-imidazol-2-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
- 10 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(3-methyl-4,5-diphenyl-3H-imidazol-2-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
- Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(2-fluoro-phenyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
- Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(3-fluoro-phenyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
- 15 Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(3,4-difluoro-phenyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
- Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(3,4-difluoro-phenyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
- Methanesulfonic acid 3-[3-(4-methyl-5-cyclohexyl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepin-7-yl ester;
- 20 7-Methylsulfonyl-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
- 7-Methylsulfonyl-3-[3-(4-phenyl)-thiazol-2-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
- 7-Methylsulfonyl-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(2-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-vinyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
- 25 7-Ethylsulfonyl-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
- 7-Ethylsulfonyl-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(quinolin-6-yl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
- 7-Ethylsulfonyl-3-[3-(3-methyl-2-phenyl-3H-imidazol-4-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
- 30 7-(Pyrrolidine-1-sulfonyl)-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
- 7-(Pyrrolidine-1-sulfonyl)-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(quinolin-6-yl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
- 35 7-(Pyrrolidine-1-sulfonyl)-3-[3-(4,5-diphenyl-1H-imidazol-2-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
- 7-(Morpholine-4-sulfonyl)-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
- 7-(Morpholine-4-sulfonyl)-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(quinolin-6-yl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
- 40 7-Pyrazin-2-yl-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;

- 7-Pyrazin-2-yl-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(quinolin-6-yl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
 3-[3-(4-Methyl-5-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine-7-sulfonic acid dimethylamide;
 5 3-[3-(4-Methyl-5-(quinolin-6-yl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine-7-sulfonic acid dimethylamide;
 7-Methylsulfonyl-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(quinolin-4-yl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
 7-Ethylsulfonyl-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(3-((5-methyl)-1,2,4-oxadiazol-3-yl)phenyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
 10 7-Ethylsulfonyl-3-[3-(4-Methyl-5-((2-methyl)-quinolin-5-yl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
 7-Ethylsulfonyl-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(2-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-vinyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
 15 7-(5-Methyl-oxazol-2-yl)-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
 7-(5-Methyl-oxazol-2-yl)-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(quinolin-6-yl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
 7-(5-Methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
 20 7-(5-Methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-3-[3-(4-methyl-5-(quinolin-6-yl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-propyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
 7-(5-Methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-3-[4-(4-methyl-5-(2-methyl-quinolin-6-yl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-yl)-butyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
 25 3-[4-[5-(4-Fluoro-phenyl)-4-methyl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-yl]-butyl]-7-(5-methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
 7-Ethanesulfonyl-3-[4-(4-methyl-5-quinolin-6-yl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-butyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine;
 7-(5-Methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-3-[4-(4-methyl-5-quinolin-6-yl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-butyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine; or
 30 7-(3-Methyl-isoxazol-5-yl)-3-[4-(4-methyl-5-quinolin-6-yl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-butyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine

or a salt thereof.

35

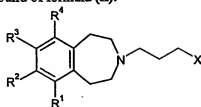
Note that in the above compound names, morpholine refers to 1,4-morpholine.

These compounds may for example be in the form of their free base or pharmaceutically (i.e. physiologically) acceptable salts thereof.

40

The present invention also provides a process for preparing a compound of formula (I) or a salt thereof wherein B is a sulfur atom and t is 3, i.e. a compound of formula (IA), which process comprises:

(a) reacting a compound of formula (II):



Formula (II)

- 5 wherein R^1 to R^4 are as herein defined and X is a leaving group; with a compound of formula (III):

A-SH

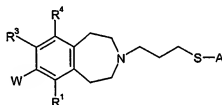
10

Formula (III)

wherein A is as herein defined ; or

(b) to prepare a compound of formula (IA) wherein R^2 is Ar^3-Z and Z is a bond, reacting a compound of formula (IV):

15

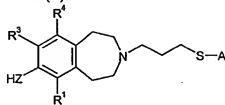


Formula (IV)

- 20 wherein R^1 , R^3 , R^4 , and A are as herein defined and W is a halogen atom or a trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy group, or W is a group M selected from a boron derivative (e.g. a boronic acid function $B(OH)_2$) or a metal function such as trialkylstannyl (e.g. $SnBu_3$), zinc halide or magnesium halide;

- with a compound Ar^3-W^1 , wherein W^1 is a halogen atom or a trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy group when W is a group M or W^1 is a group M as defined above when W is a halogen atom or a trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy group; or

- 25 (c) to prepare a compound of formula (IA) wherein R^3 is Ar^3-Z and Z is O or S, reacting a compound of formula (V):



Formula (V)

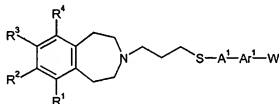
30

wherein R^1 , R^3 , R^4 and A are as herein defined; with a reagent serving to introduce the group Ar^3 ; or

(d) interconverting one compound of formula (IA) to a different compound of formula (I) e.g. by:

- 5 (i) converting one or more of R^1 to R^4 from alkoxy (e.g. methoxy) to hydroxy,
- (ii) converting one or more of R^2 or R^3 from hydroxy to sulfonyloxy, such as alkylsulfonyloxy e.g. methanesulfonyloxy or trifluoromethanesulfonyloxy,
- (iii) converting a compound in which A is substituted by one or more groups of the formula (b) as herein defined wherein Y represents S to a compound wherein Y is SO_2 ;
- 10 or (iv) converting Y from CO to CH_2 in a compound in which A is substituted by one or more groups of the formula (b); or

(e) to prepare a compound of formula (IA) where A is substituted by one or more groups of the formula (b) as herein defined where Y is a bond, reacting a compound of formula (VI):



Formula (VI)

wherein R^1 to R^4 and Ar^1 are as herein defined, W is as defined in (c) above, and Ar^1 is the same as herein defined for group A but has a substituent Ar^1-W (illustrated) instead

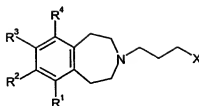
of one of the one or more substituents of formula (b) present in the product compound; with a compound Ar^2-W^1 , wherein W^1 is a halogen atom or a trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy group when W is a group M, or W^1 is a group M when W as defined in (c) above is a halogen atom or a trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy group;

and optionally thereafter forming a salt of formula (I).

Process (a) may be effected using conventional methods for the formation of a thioether. The leaving group X can be a halogen atom such as chlorine. Alternatively X can be a sulfonyloxy group such C_{1-4} alkylsulfonyloxy (e.g. methanesulfonyloxy or trifluoromethanesulfonyloxy); or Ar^4 -sulfonyloxy wherein Ar^4 is optionally substituted phenyl, an optionally substituted 5- or 6- membered aromatic heterocyclic ring, or an optionally substituted bicyclic ring system, preferably optionally substituted phenyl, wherein in each case the optional substituents are one or more C_{1-2} alkyl groups; e.g. *para*-toluenesulfonyloxy. When X is a halogen the reaction may be carried out using a base such as lithium hydroxide in a solvent such as *N,N*-dimethylformamide.

The invention also provides a compound of formula (II):

19



Formula (II)

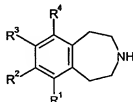
wherein R^1 to R^4 are as herein defined, provided that R^1 to R^4 are not all H, and X is a leaving group. "Leaving group" is as understood by a skilled chemist, i.e. a group which can be displaced by a nucleophile in e.g. a S_N2 or S_N1 type reaction. X can be as hereinabove defined. Specific examples of interest are given in the Descriptions hereinafter.

Reaction of a compound of formula (IV) with Ar^3-W^1 according to process (b), or a compound of formula (VI) with Ar^2-W^1 according to process (e), may be effected in the presence of a transition metal e.g., palladium catalyst such as *bis*-triphenylphosphinepalladium dichloride or *tetrakis*-triphenylphosphinepalladium (0). When M represents a boronic acid function such as $B(OH)_2$ the reaction may be carried out under basic conditions, for example using aqueous sodium carbonate in a suitable solvent such as dioxane. When M is trialkylstannyl the reaction may be carried out in an inert solvent, such as xylene or dioxane optionally in the presence of LiCl. When M is a zinc or magnesium halide the reaction may be effected in an aprotic solvent such as tetrahydrofuran. The substituent W is preferably a halogen atom such as bromine, or a sulfonyloxy group such as trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy; and W^1 is preferably a group M, such as trialkylstannyl or $B(OH)_2$.

In process (c) the reagent serving to introduce the group Ar^3 is preferably a compound of formula Ar^3-Hal , wherein Hal is a halogen atom. The reaction may be effected in the presence of a base, such as potassium carbonate, in a solvent such as *N,N*-dimethylformamide.

Interconversion reactions according to process (d) may be effected using methods well known in the art.

A compound of formula (II) may itself be prepared by reacting a compound of formula (VII):



Formula (VII)

wherein R^1 to R^4 are as hereinbefore defined;
with a compound of formula (VIII):





Formula (VIII)


5

wherein X is as herein defined and L is a leaving group, e.g., a bromine atom. For typical reaction conditions, see Description 20 hereinafter.

Compounds A-SH of formula (III) may be prepared by methods well known in the art (many such thiols are commercially available). Where the compound of formula (III)

- 10 is HS-(1,2,4-triazolyl)-R⁷ () , used to make compounds of Formula (IA); R¹⁰ can for example be Me), this can be prepared from R⁷-CO₂H or the corresponding ester or acid chloride by standard methods. For example, reaction of R⁷CO₂Et with hydrazine, followed by treatment of the resulting hydrazide with R¹⁰-NCS (e.g. MeNCS) and cyclisation of the resulting R⁷CONHNHC(=S)NH-R¹⁰ under basic conditions gives the desired triazoles. Alternatively, reaction of R⁷COCl with NH₂NHC(=S)NH-R¹⁰ in pyridine gives R⁷CONHNHC(=S)NH-R¹⁰ (*J. Het. Chem.*, 1995, 32, 183; R¹⁰ = Me).

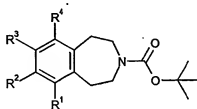
- Where the compound of formula (III) is an imidazole such as , used to make the compounds of Formula (IB), the compound may be prepared by conversion of a ketone R⁷COMe to R⁷COCH₂NH₂ by standard methods and reacting the aminoketone 20 with MeNCS (or other R¹⁰-NCS) to give the desired imidazole (*Acta. Chem. Scand.*, 1969, 23, 2879). Where the compound of formula (III) is an imidazole such as

- , used to make the compounds of Formula (IC), the compound may be prepared either by chlorosulfonation of the parent imidazole, followed by reduction of the ClSO₂- group to the HS- group (*J. Het. Chem.*, 1998, 35, 141), or by conversion of the corresponding imidazolone (*Tetrahedron*, 1989, 45, 6375) to the imidazolthione with for example P₂S₅ or Lawesson's reagent (*J. Med. Chem.*, 1993, 36, 3371).

- Compounds of formula (IV), (V) or (VI) may be prepared by processes analogous to (a), (b), (c), (d) and (e) described above. Compounds Ar²W¹, Ar³W¹ and Ar³Hal are commercially available or may be prepared by standard methods.

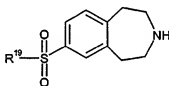
- 30 Compounds of formula (VII), where for example R¹, R², R³ or R⁴ is a halogen, methoxy, acetyl, cyano, carboxylic acid or carboxamide group, are known in the literature (for example see M. Kanao et al., *Chem. Pharm. Bull.* 1982, 30, 180-188 for the synthesis of 7-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine; WO 00/21951; and N.E. Austin et al., *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 2000, 10, 2553-2555) or may be prepared by methods well known in the art. Compounds of formula (VIII) are readily available or prepared by 35 known methods. See also Descriptions 1-40 in WO 00/21951 for syntheses of many such compounds, which can be easily varied to achieve the synthesis of other related compounds of Formula (VII).


Conversion of a compound of formula (VII) where R^2 or R^3 is a cyano or acetyl group to a compound of formula (VII) where R^2 or R^3 is a group Ar^3Z , where Ar is an oxadiazole or an isoxazole ring and Z is a bond, may be carried out by (i) conversion of (VII) to a N-Boc protected compound of formula (IX), where R^1 to R^4 are as
 5 hereinbefore defined, using standard methods; (ii) conversion of R^2 or R^3 from cyano to oxadiazolyl using known methods, or conversion of acetyl to isoxazolyl using known methods; and (iii) deprotection of a compound of formula (IX) to a compound of formula (VII) using standard methods.




Formula (IX)

Certain specific compounds of Formula (VII), which are used as intermediates in the synthesis of specific examples of compounds of Formula (I) disclosed herein, are
 15 novel over the generalised disclosure in WO 00/21951. Hence, the present invention also provides a compound of Formula (X):



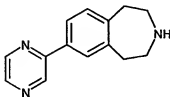
where R^{19} = ethyl, N,N-dimethylamino, pyrrolidin-1-yl (—N— ),

or 1,4-morpholin-4-yl (—N— )

Formula (X)

or a secondary-amine-protected derivative thereof, or a salt of the compound or derivative. These compounds can be made for example according to Descriptions 15a, 21-22, 21-22(a) and 21-22(b) hereinafter. Suitable secondary amine protecting groups which can be present in the protected derivatives are known to the skilled chemist and
 25 include alkoxycarbonyl (e.g. N-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl, Boc) and alkanoyl (e.g. acetyl or trifluoroacetyl). The protected derivatives can be prepared using the standard protecting group chemistry on compound (X); for example by using the methods of Descriptions 3 (for Boc protection) or 12 (for acetyl protection) or by changing the protecting group used in the Descriptions (for other protecting groups).

The present invention also provides a compound of Formula (XI):

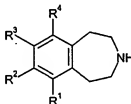


Formula (XI)

or a secondary-amine-protected derivative thereof, or a salt of the compound or derivative. These pyrazin-2-yl compounds and derivatives can be prepared for example by the methods of Descriptions 27 and 28.

- 10 The present invention also provides a process for preparing a compound of formula (I) or a salt thereof, which process comprises:

(a) reacting a compound of formula (VII):



Formula (VII)

with a compounds of formula (XII):



Formula (XII)

wherein R^1 to R^4 , t, B and A are as herein defined. The reaction of a compound of Formula (VII) with a compound of Formula (XII) is carried out by a reductive amination by standard methods known to those skilled in the art, for example by the use of sodium triacetoxyborohydride in a solvent such as 1,2-dichloroethane. The aldehydes of Formula (XII) may be prepared by methods known in the art, for example by the procedure described herein for Examples 173 (parts a-f) and Example 175 (parts a and b).

Compounds of formula (I) have been found to exhibit affinity for dopamine receptors, in particular the D_3 receptor, and are expected to be useful in the treatment of disease states which require modulation of such receptors, such as psychotic conditions. Many of the compounds of formula (I) have also been found to have greater affinity for dopamine D_3 than for D_2 receptors. The therapeutic effect of currently available antipsychotic agents (neuroleptics) is generally believed to be exerted via blockade of D_2 receptors; however this mechanism is also thought to be responsible for undesirable extrapyramidal side effects (eps) associated with many neuroleptic agents. Without wishing to be bound by theory, it has been suggested that blockade of the recently

characterised dopamine D₃ receptor may give rise to beneficial antipsychotic activity without significant eps. (see for example Sokoloff et al, Nature, 1990; 347: 146-151; and Schwartz et al, Clinical Neuropharmacology, Vol 16, No. 4, 295-314, 1993). Preferred compounds of the present invention are therefore those which have higher (e.g. $\geq 10\times$ or $\geq 100\times$ higher) affinity for dopamine D₃ than dopamine D₂ receptors (such affinity can be measured using standard methodology for example using cloned dopamine receptors – see herein). Said compounds may advantageously be used as selective modulators of D₃ receptors.

The compounds of formula (I) are of potential use as antipsychotic agents for example in the treatment of schizophrenia, schizo-affective disorders, psychotic depression, mania, paranoid and delusional disorders. Furthermore, they could have utility as adjunct therapy in Parkinsons Disease, particularly with compounds such as L-DOPA and possibly dopaminergic agonists, to reduce the side effects experienced with these treatments on long term use (e.g. see Schwartz et al., Brain Res. Reviews, 1998, 26, 236-242). From the localisation of D₃ receptors, it could also be envisaged that the compounds could also have utility for the treatment of substance abuse where it has been suggested that D₃ receptors are involved (e.g. see Levant, 1997, Pharmacol. Rev., 49, 231-252). Examples of such substance abuse include alcohol, cocaine, heroin and nicotine abuse. Other conditions which may be treated by the compounds include dyskinetic disorders such as Parkinson's disease, neuroleptic-induced parkinsonism and tardive dyskinesias; depression; anxiety, cognitive impairment including memory disorders such as Alzheimers disease, eating disorders, sexual dysfunction, sleep disorders, emesis, movement disorders, obsessive-compulsive disorders, amnesia, aggression, autism, vertigo, dementia, circadian rhythm disorders and gastric motility disorders e.g. IBS.

In a further aspect therefore the present invention provides a method of treating a condition for which modulation (especially antagonism/inhibition) of dopamine receptors (especially dopamine D₃ receptors) is beneficial, which comprises administering to a mammal (e.g. human) in need thereof an effective amount of a compound of formula (I) or a pharmaceutically (i.e physiologically) acceptable salt thereof. Such conditions in particular include psychoses/psychotic conditions such as schizophrenia, and substance abuse.

The invention also provides the use of a compound of formula (I) or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof in the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of a condition in a mammal for which modulation (especially antagonism/inhibition) of dopamine receptors (especially dopamine D₃ receptors) is beneficial.

The invention also provides a compound of formula (I) or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof for use in the treatment of a condition in a mammal for which modulation (especially antagonism/inhibition) of dopamine receptors (especially dopamine D₃ receptors) is beneficial.

A preferred use for D₃ antagonists according to the present invention is in the treatment of psychoses such as schizophrenia or in the treatment of substance abuse.

Thus, a still further aspect the invention provides a method of treating a psychotic condition (e.g. schizophrenia) or substance abuse which comprises administering to a

mammal (e.g. human) in need thereof an effective amount of a compound of formula (I) as herein defined or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

Also provided is the use of a compound of formula (I) or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof in the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of a psychotic condition (e.g. schizophrenia) or substance abuse in a mammal.

Also provided is a compound of formula (I) or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof for use in the treatment of a psychotic condition (e.g. schizophrenia) or substance abuse in a mammal.

Also provided is a compound of formula (I) or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof for use as an active therapeutic substance in a mammal, e.g. for use in the treatment of any of the conditions described herein.

"Treatment" includes prophylaxis, where this is appropriate for the relevant condition(s).

For use in medicine, the compounds of the present invention are usually administered as a standard pharmaceutical composition. The present invention therefore provides in a further aspect a pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound of formula (I) or a pharmaceutically (i.e. physiologically) acceptable salt thereof and a pharmaceutically (i.e. physiologically) acceptable carrier. The pharmaceutical composition can be for use in the treatment of any of the conditions described herein.

The compounds of formula (I) may be administered by any convenient method, for example by oral, parenteral (e.g. intravenous), buccal, sublingual, nasal, rectal or transdermal administration and the pharmaceutical compositions adapted accordingly.

The compounds of formula (I) and their pharmaceutically acceptable salts which are active when given orally can be formulated as liquids or solids, for example syrups, suspensions or emulsions, tablets, capsules and lozenges.

A liquid formulation will generally consist of a suspension or solution of the compound or pharmaceutically acceptable salt in a suitable liquid carrier(s) for example an aqueous solvent such as water, ethanol or glycerine, or a non-aqueous solvent, such as polyethylene glycol or an oil. The formulation may also contain a suspending agent, preservative, flavouring or colouring agent.

A composition in the form of a tablet can be prepared using any suitable pharmaceutical carrier(s) routinely used for preparing solid formulations. Examples of such carriers include magnesium stearate, starch, lactose, sucrose and cellulose.

A composition in the form of a capsule can be prepared using routine encapsulation procedures. For example, pellets containing the active ingredient can be prepared using standard carriers and then filled into a hard gelatin capsule; alternatively, a dispersion or suspension can be prepared using any suitable pharmaceutical carrier(s), for example aqueous gums, celluloses, silicates or oils and the dispersion or suspension then filled into a soft gelatin capsule.

Typical parenteral compositions consist of a solution or suspension of the compound or pharmaceutically acceptable salt in a sterile aqueous carrier or parenterally acceptable oil, for example polyethylene glycol, polyvinyl pyrrolidone, lecithin, arachis oil or sesame oil. Alternatively, the solution can be lyophilised and then reconstituted with a suitable solvent just prior to administration.

Compositions for nasal administration may conveniently be formulated as aerosols, drops, gels and powders. Aerosol formulations typically comprise a solution or fine suspension of the active substance in a pharmaceutically acceptable aqueous or non-aqueous solvent and are usually presented in single or multidose quantities in sterile form in a sealed container, which can take the form of a cartridge or refill for use with an atomising device. Alternatively the sealed container may be a unitary dispensing device such as a single dose nasal inhaler or an aerosol dispenser fitted with a metering valve which is intended for disposal once the contents of the container have been exhausted. Where the dosage form comprises an aerosol dispenser, it will contain a propellant which can be a compressed gas such as compressed air or an organic propellant such as a fluoro-chlorohydrocarbon. The aerosol dosage forms can also take the form of a pump-atomiser.

Compositions suitable for buccal or sublingual administration include tablets, lozenges and pastilles, wherein the active ingredient is formulated with a carrier such as sugar and acacia, tragacanth, or gelatin and glycerin.

Compositions for rectal administration are conveniently in the form of suppositories containing a conventional suppository base such as cocoa butter.

Compositions suitable for transdermal administration include ointments, gels and patches.

Preferably the composition is in unit dose form such as a tablet, capsule or ampoule.

Each dosage unit for oral administration contains preferably from 1 to 250 mg (and for parenteral administration contains preferably from 0.1 to 25 mg) of a compound of the formula (I) or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof calculated as the free base.

The pharmaceutically acceptable compounds of the invention will normally be administered in a daily dosage regimen (for an adult patient) of, for example, an oral dose of between 1 mg and 500 mg, preferably between 10 mg and 400 mg, e.g. between 10 and 250 mg or an intravenous, subcutaneous, or intramuscular dose of between 0.1 mg and 100 mg, preferably between 0.1 mg and 50 mg, e.g. between 1 and 25 mg of the compound of the formula (I) or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof calculated as the free base, the compound being administered 1 to 4 times per day. Suitably the compounds will be administered for a period of continuous therapy, for example for a week or more.

Biological Test Methods

Binding experiments on cloned dopamine (e.g. D₂, D₃ and D₄) receptors

The ability of the compounds to bind selectively to human D₂/D₃/D₄ dopamine receptors can be demonstrated by measuring their binding to cloned receptors. The inhibition constants (K_i) of test compounds for displacement of [¹²⁵I]-iodosulpride binding to human D₂/D₃ and [³H]-YM-09151 to D₄ dopamine receptors expressed in CHO cells were determined as follows. The cell lines were shown to be free from bacterial, fungal and mycoplasmal contaminants, and stocks of each were stored frozen in liquid nitrogen. Cultures were grown as monolayers or in suspension in standard cell culture media. Cells were recovered by scraping (from monolayers) or by centrifugation (from suspension

cultures), and were washed two or three times by suspension in phosphate buffered saline followed by collection by centrifugation. Cell pellets were stored frozen at -80°C. Crude cell membranes were prepared by homogenisation followed by high-speed centrifugation, and characterisation of cloned receptors achieved by radioligand binding.

- 5 Preparation of CHO cell membranes: Cell pellets were gently thawed at room temperature, and resuspended in about 20 volumes of ice-cold Extraction buffer; 5mM EDTA, 50mM Trizma pre-set crystals (pH 7.4 @ 37°C), 1mM MgCl₂, 5mM KCl and 120mM NaCl. The suspension was homogenised using an Ultra-Turrax at full speed for 15 seconds. The homogenate was centrifuged at 18,000 r.p.m for 15 min at 4°C in a
10 Sorvall RC5C centrifuge. Supernatant was discarded, and homogenate re-suspended in extraction buffer then centrifugation was repeated. The final pellet was resuspended in 50mM Trizma pre-set crystals (pH 7.4 @ 37°C) and stored in 1ml aliquot tubes at -80°C (D2 = 3.0E+08 cells, D3 = 7.0E+07 cells and D4 = 1.0E+08 cells). The protein content was determined using a BCA protocol and bovine serum albumin as a standard (Smith, P.
15 K., et al., Measurement of protein using bicinchoninic acid. Anal. Biochem. 150, 76-85 (1985)).

- Binding experiments: Crude D2/D3 cell membranes were incubated with 0.03nM [¹²⁵I]-Iodosulpride (~2000 Ci/mmol; Amersham, U. K.) and D4 with 0.8nM [³H]-YM-09151 (~85 Ci/mmol; NEN, UK), and the test compound in a buffer containing
20 50mM Trizma pre-set crystals (pH 7.4 @ 37°C), 120mM NaCl, 5mM KCl, 2mM CaCl₂, 1mM MgCl₂, 0.3% (w/v) bovine serum albumin. The total volume is 0.2ml and incubated in a water bath at 37°C for 40 minutes. Following incubation, samples were filtered onto GF/B Unifilters using a Canberra Packard Filtermate, and washed four times with ice-cold 50mM Trizma pre-set crystals (pH 7.4 @ 37°C). The radioactivity on the
25 filters was measured using a Canberra Packard Topcount Scintillation counter. Non-specific binding was defined with 10µM SKF-102161 (YM-09151). For competition curves, 10 serial log concentrations of competing cold drug were used (Dilution range: 10µM-10pM). Competition curves were analysed using Inflexion, an iterative curve fitting programme in Excel. Results were expressed as pKi values where
30 pKi = -log₁₀[K_i].

The exemplified compounds have pKi values within the range of 7.5 – 9.5 at the dopamine D3 receptor. Selected especially preferred compounds are as follows, with pKi values between 8.0 – 9.5. pKi results are only estimated to be accurate to about ±0.2-0.3.

- 35 Examples: 1, 5, 8, 13, 14, 22, 51, 61, 63, 67, 70, 72, 74, 91, 93, 95, 96, 99, 100, 126, 130, 131, 133, 135, 137, 138, 143, 146, 168, 169, 173, 176.

Functional Activity at cloned dopamine receptors

- 40 The functional activity of compounds at human D2 and human D3 receptors (i.e. agonism or antagonism) may be determined using a Cytosensor Microphysiometer (McConnell HM et al Science 1992 257 1906-1912). In Microphysiometer experiments, cells (hD2_CHO or hD3_CHO) were seeded into 12mm Transwell inserts (Costar) at 300000 cells/cup in foetal calf serum (FCS)-containing medium. The cells were incubated for 6h at 37°C in 5%CO₂, before changing to FCS-free medium. After a further 16-18h, cups

were loaded into the sensor chambers of the Cytosensor Microphysiometer (Molecular Devices) and the chambers perfused with running medium (bicarbonate-free Dulbecco's modified Eagles medium containing 2 mM glutamine and 44 mM NaCl) at a flow rate of 100 μ l/min. Each pump cycle lasted 90s. The pump was on for the first 60s and the acidification rate determined between 68 and 88s, using the Cytosoft programme. Test compounds were diluted in running medium. In experiments to determine agonist activity, cells were exposed (4.5 min for hD2, 7.5 min for hD3) to increasing concentrations of putative agonist at half hour intervals. Seven concentrations of the putative agonist were used. Peak acidification rate to each putative agonist concentration was determined and concentration-response curves fitted using Robofit [Tilford, N.S., Bowen, W.P. & Baxter, G.S. Br. J. Pharmacol. (1995), Vol. 115, 160P]. In experiments to determine antagonist potency, cells were treated at 30 min intervals with five pulses of a submaximal concentration of quinpirole (100 nM for hD2 cells, 30 nM for hD3 cells), before exposure to the lowest concentration of putative antagonist. At the end of the next 30 min interval, cells were pulsed again with quinpirole (in the continued presence of the antagonist) before exposure to the next highest antagonist concentration. In all, five concentrations of antagonist were used in each experiment. Peak acidification rate to each agonist concentration was determined and concentration-inhibition curves fitted using Robofit.

20 Examples

The invention is further illustrated by the following non-limiting examples :

Description 1

25 2,3,4,5-Tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

1,2-Phenylenediacetonitrile (7.5g, 48 mmol) dissolved in ethanol (150ml) was added to Raney Ni (2g) which had been previously washed with ethanol (3x20ml). The mixture was then hydrogenated at 50°C at 50psi pressure with shaking for 24h. The reaction mixture was then cooled to room temperature and filtered through a pad of kieselguhr and washed through with ethanol (100ml). The filtrate was evaporated *in vacuo* to give a brown oil which was chromatographed on silica gel (100g), eluting with 2-10% methanol in CH_2Cl_2 to give the title compound as a brown oil (2.45g, 35%).

35 Mass spectrum (API^+) Found: 148 (MH^+). $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{13}\text{N}$ requires 147.

Description 2

7-Hydroxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine, hydrobromide

7-Methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (10 g) (known from M. Kanao et al., *Chem. Pharm. Bull.* 1982, 30, 180-188) in 48% aqueous hydrobromic acid (350 ml) was allowed to stir at 100 °C for 4 h. The mixture was cooled to 20 °C then evaporated to dryness *in vacuo* to give the title compound (14.5 g) as a brown solid.

Mass spectrum (API⁺): Found 164 (MH⁺). C₁₀H₁₃NO requires 163.

¹H NMR (DMSO) δ: 2.80 – 3.25 (8H, m), 4.42 (2H, br s), 6.50 – 6.70 (2H, m), 6.98 (1H, d, J = 8 Hz), 8.86 (1H, br s).

5

Description 3

3-(*tert*-Butyloxycarbonyl)-7-hydroxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-3-benzazepine

To a solution of 7-hydroxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-3-benzazepine, hydrobromide (14.5 g) in tetrahydrofuran (100 ml) and water (70 ml), was added triethylamine (8 g), followed by a solution of di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate (14 g) in THF (20 ml). The resulting mixture was allowed to stir at 20 °C for 16 h, partitioned between ethyl acetate (200 ml) and water (200 ml). The aqueous layer was washed with ethyl acetate (100 ml). The combined organic extracts were washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (100 ml), dried (Na₂SO₄) and evaporated to dryness *in vacuo*. The resulting oil was purified by silica gel chromatography. Elution with ethyl acetate in hexane (10% - 30%) gave the title compound (8 g).

10

15

Mass spectrum (API⁺): Found 164 (MH⁺-Boc). C₁₅H₂₁NO₃ requires 263.

20

¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.48 (9H, s), 2.75 – 2.87 (4H, m), 3.40 – 3.60 (4H, m), 4.95 (1H, s), 6.50 – 6.62 (2H, m), 6.96 (1H, d, J = 8 Hz).

Description 4

3-(*tert*-Butyloxycarbonyl)-7-trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-3-benzazepine

25

30

To a stirred mixture of 3-(*tert*-butyloxycarbonyl)-7-hydroxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-3-benzazepine (7 g) and triethylamine (5.4 ml) in dry dichloromethane under argon at -20 °C, was added, dropwise, trifluoromethanesulfonic anhydride (5 ml). The resulting mixture was allowed to warm slowly to 20 °C over 16 h, then was poured into saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (200 ml) and extracted with dichloromethane (2 x 150 ml). The combined organic extracts were washed with brine (150 ml), dried (Na₂SO₄) and evaporated *in vacuo* to give an amber oil. Silica gel chromatography, eluting with ethyl acetate in hexane (10% - 30%) gave the title compound (7 g) as an amber oil.

35

Mass spectrum (API⁺): Found 396 (MH⁺). C₁₆H₂₀F₃NO₅S requires 395.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.48 (9H, s), 2.85 – 2.95 (4H, m), 3.5 – 3.65 (4H, m), 7.00 – 7.05 (2H, m), 7.15 – 7.27 (1H, m).

40

Description 5

3-(*tert*-Butyloxycarbonyl)-7-cyano-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-3-benzazepine

A mixture of 3-(*tert*-butyloxycarbonyl)-7-trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-3-benzazepine (4.78 g, 12.1 mmol), zinc cyanide (1.42 g, 15.6 mmol) and tetrakis-triphenylphosphine palladium (0) (1.4 g, 1.2 mmol, 10 mol%), in dry dimethylformamide

(50ml) was stirred at 100 °C for 3 h under argon. After cooling to room temperature the reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (120 ml) and filtered. The filtrate was washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (100 ml), then water (2 x 50 ml), then brine (50 ml). The organic layer was dried over sodium sulfate and evaporated *in vacuo* to give brown oil, which was purified by chromatography on silica gel with 20 – 100% ethyl acetate - hexane elution to give the title compound (0.765 g, 23%) as a brown oil.

Mass spectrum (API⁺): Found 173 (MH⁺-Boc). C₁₆H₂₀N₂O₂ requires 272.

- 10 ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.47 (9H, s), 2.93 (4H, m), 3.56 (4H, m), 7.21 (1H, d, J = 8 Hz), 7.42 (2H, m).

Description 6

7-Cyano-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

- 15 A mixture of 3-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-7-cyano-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (765 mg, 2.81 mmol) and trifluoroacetic acid (2 ml), in dichloromethane (20 ml) was stirred at 40 °C for 1 h. The reaction mixture was evaporated to dryness *in vacuo* and partitioned between ethyl acetate (50 ml) and water (50 ml). The aqueous layer was basified using potassium carbonate and re-extracted with ethyl acetate (2 x 30ml). The combined basic organic extracts were dried over sodium sulfate and evaporated *in vacuo* to give the title compound as a colourless oil (212 mg, 44%).
- 20

Mass spectrum (API⁺): Found 173 (MH⁺). C₁₁H₁₂N₂ requires 172.

- 25 ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.04 (1H, br s), 2.95 (8H, m), 7.18 (1H, d, J = 8 Hz), 7.38 (2H, m).

Description 7

3-(*tert*-Butoxycarbonyl)-7-(3-(5-methyl)-1,2,4-oxadiazolyl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

- 30 To a suspension of sodium methoxide (0.6 g, 11 mmol) in anhydrous methanol (12ml) under argon, was added hydroxylamine hydrochloride (0.76 g, 11 mmol), followed by 3-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-7-cyano-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (1.5 g, 5.5 mmol). The mixture was stirred under reflux for 16 h, then allowed to cool to room temperature. The methanol was evaporated *in vacuo* and the resulting residue partitioned between dichloromethane (100 ml) and water (100 ml). The aqueous layer was washed with more CH₂Cl₂ (100 ml). The combined organic extracts were dried and evaporated *in vacuo* to give a solid (1.8 g), which was mixed with acetic anhydride (15 ml) and heated at 120 °C for 2 h. Excess acetic anhydride was evaporated *in vacuo* and the resulting oily residue partitioned between CH₂Cl₂ (250 ml) and saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (250 ml).
- 35
- 40 The organic layer was washed with more bicarbonate solution (200 ml), dried, and evaporated to give an oil. Gravity silica gel chromatography eluting with ethyl acetate in hexane gave the title compound (3.2 g, 73 %) as a colourless oil.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.49 (9H, s), 2.65 (3H, s), 2.96 (4H, m), 3.58 (4H, m), 7.22 (1H, d, J = 8 Hz), 7.80 (2H, m).

Description 8

- 5 7-(3-(5-Methyl)-1,2,4-oxadiazolyl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine
A solution of 3-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-7-(3-(5-methyl)-1,2,4-oxadiazolyl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (1.2 g, 3.6 mmol) in CH₂Cl₂ (15 ml) and trifluoroacetic acid (15 ml) was heated under reflux for 2 h. Solvent was evaporated *in vacuo* and the residue partitioned between diethyl ether (50 ml) and water (50 ml). The aqueous layer was
10 saturated with potassium carbonate then extracted with CH₂Cl₂ (2 x 100 ml). The combined organic extracts were dried and evaporated *in vacuo* to give the title compound (0.74 g, 88 %) as an oil.

Mass spectrum (API⁺): Found 230 (MH⁺). C₁₃H₁₅N₃O requires 229.

- 15 ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.80 (1H, br s), 2.65 (3H, s), 2.90 - 3.00 (8H, m), 7.20 (1H, d, J = 8 Hz), 7.75 - 7.85 (2H, m).

Description 9

- 20 7-(3-(*tert*-Butoxycarbonyl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepinyl)carboxamide
To a solution of 3-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-7-cyano-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (5.44 g, 20 mmol) cooled in ice bath, was added potassium carbonate (0.4 g) in water (1 ml), followed by dropwise addition of 30 % w/w hydrogen peroxide (2.4 ml). The resulting mixture was stirred at 5 °C for 5 min, then the ice-bath was removed. After
25 another 5 min, water (100 ml) was added. The solid precipitate was collected by filtration and dried to give the title compound (4.35 g, 75 %) as a colourless solid.

- 30 ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.48 (9H, s), 2.96 (4H, m), 3.56 (4H, m), 5.60 - 6.30 (2H, br d), 7.19 (1H, d, J = 8 Hz), 7.50 - 7.80 (2H, m).

Description 10

- 3-(*tert*-Butoxycarbonyl)-7-(5-(3-methyl)-1,2,4-oxadiazolyl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine
A mixture of 7-(3-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepinyl)carboxamide (4.29 g, 14.8 mmol) and *N,N*-dimethyl acetamide dimethyl
35 acetal (6 ml, 41 mmol) was heated at 125 °C under argon. Methanol was removed from the reaction by means of a distillation condenser over 2 h. The reaction mixture was further evaporated *in vacuo* to give a thick brown oily residue. To this residue was added, in order, dioxan (10 ml), 5M sodium hydroxide (4 ml), hydroxylamine hydrochloride (1.4
40 g, 20 mmol) and 70 % aqueous acetic acid (20 ml). The combined mixture was allowed to stir at room temperature for 15 min and then at 90 °C for 1 h. The mixture was treated with water (100 ml) and extracted with CH₂Cl₂ (2x150 ml). Combined organic extracts were washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate (100 ml), dried and evaporated *in vacuo*

to give an oil. Gravity silica gel chromatography, eluting with ethyl acetate in hexane, gave the title compound (3.9 g, 80 %) as a colourless solid.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.49 (9H, s), 2.47 (3H, s), 2.98 (4H, m), 3.60 (4H, m), 7.27 (1H, d, J = 8 Hz), 7.80 - 7.90 (2H, m).

Description 11

7-(5-(3-Methyl)-1,2,4-oxadiazolyl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

A solution of 3-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-7-(5-(3-methyl)-1,2,4-oxadiazolyl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (3.8 g, 11.6 mmol) in CH₂Cl₂ (50 ml) and trifluoroacetic acid (12 ml) was heated under reflux for 2 h. Solvent was evaporated *in vacuo* and the residue partitioned between diethyl ether (200 ml) and water (200 ml). The aqueous layer was saturated with potassium carbonate then extracted with CH₂Cl₂ (3 x 200 ml). The combined organic extracts were dried and evaporated *in vacuo* to give the title compound (2.4 g, 91 %) as a colourless solid.

Mass spectrum (AP⁺): Found 230 (MH⁺). C₁₃H₁₅N₃O requires 229.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.86 (1H, br s), 2.47 (3H, s), 3.00 (8H, m), 7.25 (1H, d, J = 8 Hz), 7.80 - 7.90 (2H, m).

Description 12

3-Acetyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

A solution of acetic anhydride (6.37 g, 0.062 mol) in dichloromethane (50 ml) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of 2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (8.35 g, 0.057 mol) and triethylamine (8.7 ml) in dichloromethane (50 ml) at 0 °C under argon. After stirring at room temperature for 18 h, water (80 ml) was added and the organic layer separated. The organic layer was washed with 0.5 M hydrochloric acid (50 ml), saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (50 ml), water (50 ml) and then dried (Na₂SO₄). Evaporation of the solvent *in vacuo* gave the title compound (10.24 g, 95 %) as a yellow oil which solidified on standing.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.18 (3H, s), 2.85 - 3.00 (4H, m), 3.55 - 3.60 (2H, m), 3.72 - 3.80 (2H, m), 7.10 - 7.20 (4H, m).

Mass Spectrum AP⁺: Found 190 (MH⁺). C₁₂H₁₅NO requires 189.

Description 13

3-Acetyl-7-chlorosulfonyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

A solution of 3-acetyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (4.0 g, 0.021 mol) in dichloromethane (25 ml) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of chlorosulphonic acid in dichloromethane (25 ml) at -70 °C under argon. After warming to room temperature, the reaction was stirred for 18 h before being quenched in ice/water (200 ml). The resulting mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 100 ml), dried (Na₂SO₄) and the

solvent evaporated *in vacuo* to give the title compound (2.74 g, 45 %) as a pale yellow solid.

^1H NMR: δ (CDCl_3): 2.21 (3H, s), 3.0 - 3.10 (4H, m), 3.60 - 3.70 (2H, m), 3.74 - 3.80 (2H, m), 7.35 - 7.40 (1H, m), 7.80 - 7.85 (2H, m).

Mass spectrum AP^+ : Found 288 & 290 (MH^+). $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{14}\text{NSO}_2\text{Cl}$ requires 287 & 289.

Description 14

3-Acetyl-7-methylsulfonyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

To a stirred solution of sodium sulphite (1.60 g, 12.6 mmol) and sodium hydrogen carbonate (1.14 g, 13.56 mmol) in water (25 ml) was added 3-acetyl-7-chlorosulfonyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (2.6 g, 9.04 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (10 ml). The reaction mixture was then heated at 75 °C for 2 h, cooled to 30 °C and methyl iodide (2.8 ml, 45.20 mmol) added. After stirring at 50 °C for 24 h, the reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature and partitioned between water (50 ml) and ethyl acetate (100 ml). The aqueous layer was then separated and further extracted with ethyl acetate (2 x 80 ml). The combined organics were then dried (Na_2SO_4) and the solvent removed *in vacuo* to give the title compound (1.77 g, 73 %) as a pale yellow solid.

^1H NMR (CDCl_3) 2.20 (3H, s), 2.99 - 3.05 (4H, m), 3.06 (3H, s), 3.61 - 3.64 (2H, m), 3.73 - 3.77 (2H, m), 7.32 - 7.37 (1H, m), 7.7 - 7.75 (2H, m).

Mass Spectrum AP^+ : Found 268 (MH^+). $\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{17}\text{NSO}_3$ requires 267.

Description 15

7-Methylsulfonyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

A solution of 3-acetyl-7-methylsulfonyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (1.75 g, 6.55 mmol) in 5 M hydrochloric acid was heated at reflux for 18 h. The reaction mixture was then cooled to room temperature, basified to pH = 12 with potassium carbonate and the solvent evaporated *in vacuo*. The solid residue was then extracted with ethyl acetate (5 x 60 ml) and the combined organics dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent was then evaporated *in vacuo* to give the title compound (450 mg, 32 %) as a pale yellow oil.

^1H NMR (CDCl_3) 1.88 (1H, br s), 2.95 - 3.13 (8H, m), 3.04 (3H, s), 7.25 - 7.30 (1H, d), 7.65 - 7.72 (2H, m).

Mass Spectrum AP^+ : Found 226 (MH^+). $\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_{15}\text{NSO}_2$ requires 225.

Description 15a

7-Ethylsulfonyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

This compound was prepared in a similar manner to Descriptions 14 and 15, using ethyl iodide instead of methyl iodide.

Mass Spectrum AP^+ : Found 240 (MH^+). $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{17}\text{NSO}_2$ requires 239.

Description 16

3-Trifluoroacetyl-7-(5-methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

- (a) Trifluoroacetic anhydride (13.2 ml) was added to a solution of 7-cyano-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (14.5 g) and triethylamine (14.2 ml) in dichloromethane (300 ml) at 0 °C. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature over 1.5 h, then washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (300 ml), the organic layer dried and evaporated to give 3-trifluoroacetyl-7-cyano-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine as a yellow oil (20.3 g).
- (b) 3-Trifluoroacetyl-7-cyano-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (20.3 g) and nickel-aluminium alloy (35.5 g) in 75% aq. formic acid (400 ml) were heated at 80 °C for 3 h. The reaction was allowed to cool, filtered and the filtrate extracted with ethyl acetate. The combined organic layers were washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, dried and evaporated to give 3-trifluoroacetyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine-7-carbaldehyde (20.0 g) as a yellow oil.
- (c) 3-Trifluoroacetyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine-7-carbaldehyde (20.0 g) and hydroxylamine hydrochloride (6.1 g) in pyridine (140 ml) were stirred overnight and the reaction then evaporated *in vacuo*. The residue was partitioned between ethyl acetate and 10% sodium carbonate solution and the combined organic layers dried and evaporated to give 3-trifluoroacetyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine-7-carbaldehyde oxime (17.2 g) as a yellow solid.
- (d) To a solution of 3-Trifluoroacetyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine-7-carbaldehyde oxime (17.2 g) in chloroform (700 ml) was added N-bromosuccinimide (11.8 g), portionwise over 5 min., and the mixture stirred for 1.5 h. 2-Chloropropene (30.3 ml) was added and the reaction cooled to -20 °C. Triethylamine (25.1 ml) in chloroform was added over 10 min. and the reaction stirred at room temperature for 18 h. The solution was washed with 2M HCl, dried and evaporated and the residue chromatographed on Si gel, gradient eluting with 10-20% EtOAc in hexane to give the title compound (7.1 g) as a yellow oil.

Mass spectrum (AP⁺) : Found 325 [MH⁺] C₁₆H₁₅N₂O₂F₃ requires 324.

Description 17**7-(5-Methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine**

A mixture of 3-trifluoroacetyl-7-(5-methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (7.1 g) and K₂CO₃ (12.1 g) in 1:1 methanol:water (400 ml) was heated at 50 °C for 1h. The mixture was cooled, poured into water (500 ml) and extracted with dichloromethane. The combined organic layers were dried and evaporated *in vacuo* to give the title compound as a yellow oil (3.9 g).

Mass spectrum (AP⁺) : Found 229 [MH⁺] C₁₄H₁₆N₂O requires 228.

Description 17a**7-(5-Methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine hydrochloride**

a) 7-(1-Hydroxyimino-ethyl)-1,2,4,5-tetrahydro-benzo[d]azepine-3-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester

7-Acetyl-3-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-3-benzazepine (8.9g, 30.8mmol) was dissolved in pyridine (30ml) and hydroxylamine hydrochloride (2.3g, 33mmol) was added and the mixture stirred for 2 h at room temperature. The solvent was evaporated and hexane (300ml) and water (100ml) were added and the colourless precipitate was filtered and washed with hexane (3 x 100ml). The compound was dried in vacuo to give the title compound (6.23g, 66%).

10 Mass Spectrum AP^+ : Found 205 ($[M-Boc]^+$). $C_{17}H_{24}N_2O_3$ requires 304.

b) 7-(5-Methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-1,2,4,5-tetrahydro-benzo[d]azepine-3-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester

7-(1-Hydroxyimino-ethyl)-1,2,4,5-tetrahydro-benzo[d]azepine-3-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (2.89g, 9.5mmol) was cooled to 0°C in tetrahydrofuran (70ml) under argon. Butyllithium (7.6ml, 2.5M in hexane, 19mmol) was added dropwise to give an orange solution which was stirred for 1 h. N-Methyl-N-methoxy acetamide (824mg, 8mmol) was added dropwise in tetrahydrofuran (30ml) over 3 min. The mixture was stirred for 1 h and then poured into water (27ml) and concentrated sulphuric acid (3ml). The resulting mixture was heated to reflux for 1 h and then cooled and neutralised with solid sodium bicarbonate. The mixture was partitioned between dichloromethane (200ml) and water (100ml) and the layers separated. The aqueous portion was extracted with dichloromethane (2 x 100ml) and the combined organic extracts were evaporated. The residue was treated with dichloromethane (50ml) and di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate (2.18g, 10mmol) and the mixture stirred for 20 min, washed with water (50ml) and evaporated. The residue was treated with pyridine (10ml) and hydroxylamine hydrochloride (0.77g, 11mmol) and the mixture stirred for 1 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue dissolved in dichloromethane (50 ml) which was washed with dilute hydrochloric acid (3 x 50ml, 0.5M). The solvent was evaporated and the residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (eluent dichloromethane) which gave the title compound as a colourless solid (447mg, 61%).

Mass Spectrum AP^+ : Found 229 ($[M-Boc]^+$). $C_{19}H_{24}N_2O_3$ requires 328.

35 c) 7-(5-Methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-3-benzazepine hydrochloride

7-(5-Methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-1,2,4,5-tetrahydro-benzo[d]azepine-3-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (1.9g, 5.8mmol) was treated with ethanol (20ml) followed by a saturated ethanolic hydrochloride solution (20ml). The mixture was stirred for 12 h until a precipitate was observed. Diethyl ether (100ml) was added and the precipitate filtered and dried in vacuo to give the title compound as a colourless solid (1.25g, 81%).

Mass Spectrum AP^+ : Found 229 ($[M+H]^+$). $C_{14}H_{16}N_2O$ requires 228.

1H NMR (MeOD) δ : 2.47 (3H, s), 3.20 (4H, m), 3.33 (4H, m), 6.55 (1H, s), 7.34 (1H, d, $J = 8$ Hz), 7.64 (1H, d, $J = 8$ Hz), 7.68 (1H, s).

5

Description 18

3-(*tert*-Butyloxycarbonyl)-7-methanesulfonyloxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

- 10 A solution of 3-(*tert*-butyloxycarbonyl)-7-hydroxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (3.0 g, 0.011 mol), methanesulfonylchloride (1.44 g, 0.013 mol), triethylamine (1.27 g, 0.013 mol) and dichloromethane (50 ml) was stirred at room temperature for 18 h. The reaction mixture was then partitioned between dichloromethane (50 ml) and a saturated solution of sodium hydrogen carbonate (50 ml). The organic layer was separated, washed with water (50 ml) and then dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent was then evaporated *in vacuo*
- 15 to give the title compound (3.85 g, 99 %) as a pale yellow oil.

1H NMR ($CDCl_3$) δ : 1.48 (9H, s), 2.86 - 2.92 (4H, m), 3.13 (3H, s), 3.53 - 3.56 (4H, m), 7.00 - 7.03 (2H, m), 7.13 - 7.16 (1H, m).

- 20 Mass spectrum (AP^+): Found 242 [$M-BOC$] H^+ . $C_{16}H_{23}NSO_5$ requires 341.

Description 19

7-Methanesulfonyloxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

- 25 A solution of 3-(*tert*-butyloxycarbonyl)-7-methanesulfonyloxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (3.8 g, 0.011 mol), trifluoroacetic acid (3.76 g, 0.033 mol) and dichloromethane (50 ml) was heated at 50 °C for 5h. The solvents were then evaporated *in vacuo* and the residue partitioned between water (200 ml) and ethyl acetate (150 ml). The aqueous layer was removed and washed with ethyl acetate (100 ml) and then basified
- 30 to pH 14 with 40% sodium hydroxide. The suspension was then extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 150 ml) and the combined organic layers dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvents were evaporated *in vacuo* to give the title compound (2.15 g, 80 %) as a colourless oil.

1H NMR ($CDCl_3$) δ : 2.88 - 3.00 (8H, m), 3.13 (3H, s), 6.99 - 7.03 (2H, m), 7.12 (1H, d).

35

Mass spectrum (AP^+): Found 242 (MH^+). $C_{11}H_{15}NSO_3$ requires 241.

Description 20

3-(3-Chloropropyl)-7-methanesulfonyloxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

- 40 A mixture of 7-methanesulfonyloxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (1.75g, 7.3 mmol), 1-bromo-3-chloropropane (0.80 ml, 8.1 mmol) and triethylamine (3 ml, 21.5 mmol) in anhydrous tetrahydrofuran (25 ml) was heated at reflux for 5h. The mixture was cooled, evaporated *in vacuo* and the residue partitioned between water (100 ml) and

ethyl acetate (100 ml). The aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (100 ml) and the combined organics washed with brine (150 ml), dried (Na_2SO_4) and evaporated *in vacuo*. Purification by chromatography on silica gel using 10 - 70% ethyl acetate in hexane gradient elution gave the title compound as a pale orange oil (1.22g, 53%).

5

Mass spectrum (API^+): Found 318 (MH^+). $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{20}^{35}\text{ClNO}_3\text{S}$ requires 317.

^1H NMR δ 1.85 - 2.05 (2H, m), 2.55 - 2.70 (6H, m), 2.85 - 2.95 (4H, m), 3.12 (3H, s), 3.60 - 3.66 (2H, t, $J = 6.5$ Hz), 6.95 - 7.15 (3H, m).

10

The following compounds were prepared in a similar manner to Description 20:

(a) 3-(3-Chloropropyl)-7-cyano-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine.

15

Mass spectrum (API^+): Found 249 (MH^+). $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{17}^{35}\text{ClN}_2$ requires 248.
Prepared from the compound of Description 6.

(b) 3-(3-Chloropropyl)-7-(5-methyl-1,2,4-oxadiazol-3-yl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine.

20

Mass spectrum (API^+): Found 306 (MH^+). $\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{20}^{35}\text{ClN}_3\text{O}$ requires 305.
Prepared from the compound of Description 8.

(c) 3-(3-Chloropropyl)-7-methylsulfonyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

25

Mass spectrum (API^+): Found 302 (MH^+). $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{20}^{35}\text{ClNO}_2\text{S}$ requires 301.
Prepared from the compound of Description 15.

(d) 3-(3-Chloropropyl)-7-(morpholin-4-yl)sulfonyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

30

Mass spectrum (API^+): Found 373 (MH^+). $\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{25}^{35}\text{ClN}_2\text{O}_3\text{S}$ requires 372.
Prepared from the compound of Description 22.

(e) 3-(3-Chloropropyl)-7-(5-methyl-oxazol-2-yl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

35

Mass spectrum (API^+): Found 305 (MH^+). $\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{21}^{35}\text{ClN}_2\text{O}$ requires 304.
Prepared from the compound of Description 25.

(f) 3-(3-Chloropropyl)-7-ethylsulfonyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

40

Mass spectrum (API^+): Found 316 (MH^+). $\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{22}^{35}\text{ClNO}_2\text{S}$ requires 315.
Prepared from the compound of Description 15a.

(g) 3-(3-Chloropropyl)-7-(pyrrolidine-1-sulfonyl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

45

Mass spectrum (API^+): Found 357 (MH^+). $\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{25}^{35}\text{ClN}_2\text{O}_2\text{S}$ requires 356.

Prepared from the compound of Description 22(a).

(b) 3-(3-Chloropropyl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine-7-sulfonic acid dimethylamide

- 5 Mass spectrum (API⁺): Found 331 (MH⁺). C₁₅H₂₃³⁵ClN₂O₂S requires 330.
Prepared from the compound of Description 22(b).

(i) 3-(3-Chloropropyl)-7-pyrazin-2-yl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

- 10 Mass spectrum (API⁺): Found 302 (MH⁺). C₁₇H₂₀³⁵ClN₃ requires 301.
Prepared from the compound of Description 28.

(j) 3-(3-Chloropropyl)-7-(5-methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

- 15 Mass spectrum (API⁺): Found 305 (MH⁺). C₁₇H₂₁³⁵ClN₂O requires 304.
Prepared from the compound of Description 17.

Description 21

3-Acetyl-7-(morpholin-4-yl)sulfonyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

- 20 A mixture of 3-acetyl-7-chlorosulfonyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (4.0 g, 13.9 mmol), morpholine (1.8 ml, 20.8 mmol) and triethylamine (2.14 ml, 15.3 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (120 ml) was heated at 60 °C for 3 h. The reaction mixture was then cooled, filtered and the filtrate evaporated *in vacuo* to give a yellow solid. Crystallisation from dichloromethane/*n*-hexane gave the title compound as an off-white solid (4.4 g, 94 %).

25 Mass Spectrum AP⁺: Found 339 (MH⁺). C₁₆H₂₂N₂SO₄ requires 338.

Description 22

7-(Morpholin-4-yl)sulfonyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

- 30 A solution of 3-acetyl-7-(morpholin-4-yl)sulfonyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (3.0 g, 8.9 mmol) in 5 M hydrochloric acid was heated at reflux for 18 h. The reaction mixture was then cooled to room temperature, basified to pH = 12 with potassium carbonate and the solvent evaporated *in vacuo*. The solid residue was then extracted with ethyl acetate (5 x 100 ml) and the combined organics dried (Na₂SO₄). The solvent was then evaporated *in vacuo* to give the title compound (1.49 g, 57 %) as a pale yellow oil.

35 Mass Spectrum AP⁺: Found 297 (MH⁺). C₁₄H₂₀N₂SO₃ requires 296.

The following compounds were prepared in a similar manner to Descriptions 21 and 22:

(a) 7-(Pyrrolidine-1-sulfonyl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine

- 40 Mass Spectrum AP⁺: Found 281 (MH⁺). C₁₄H₂₀N₂SO₂ requires 280.
Prepared using pyrrolidine instead of morpholine in Description 21.

(b) 2,3,4,5-Tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine-7-sulfonic acid dimethylamide

Mass Spectrum AP⁺: Found 255 (MH⁺). C₁₂H₁₈N₂SO₂ requires 254.

Prepared using dimethylamine instead of morpholine in Description 21.

5

Description 23**3-(*tert*-Butyloxycarbonyl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine-7-carboxylic acid prop-2-ynyl amide**

- 10 A mixture of 3-(*tert*-butyloxycarbonyl)-7-cyano-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine (10 g, 37 mmol) and KOH (4.1 g, 73 mmol) in EtOH (100 ml) and water (20 ml) was heated under reflux for 24 h. Mixture allowed to cool and evaporated *in vacuo* and the residue redissolved in water (150 ml). The solution was acidified to pH4 and the precipitate filtered and dried. The crude acid (5 g, 17 mmol) was then dissolved in dichloromethane (100 ml), under Argon and propargylamine (0.77 g, 14 mmol), EDC (2.9 g 15 mmol) and HOBT (200 mg) added and the reaction stirred for 18 h. Saturated NaHCO₃ solution (100 ml) was added and the organic layer separated. The aqueous layer was re-extracted with dichloromethane and the combined organic layers dried and evaporated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (gradient elution, hexane/ethyl acetate) to give the title compound (3.8 g) as a colourless solid.

- 20 Mass Spectrum AP⁺: Found 327 ([M-H]⁺). C₁₉H₂₄N₂O₃ requires 328.

Description 24**3-(*tert*-Butyloxycarbonyl)-7-(5-methyl-oxazol-2-yl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine**

- 25 A mixture of 2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine-7-carboxylic acid prop-2-ynyl amide (3.8 g) and mercury (II) acetate (350 mg) in glacial acetic acid was heated under reflux for 1.5 h. After cooling, the solvent was removed *in vacuo* and the residue partitioned between EtOAc (200 ml) and saturated NaHCO₃ solution (100 ml). The aqueous layer was re-extracted with EtOAc and the combined organic layers dried and evaporated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified using silica gel chromatography (gradient elution, hexane/EtOAc) to give the title compound (2.35 g) as a colourless oil.
- 30 Mass Spectrum AP⁺: Found 229 ([M-Boc]⁺). C₁₉H₂₄N₂O₃ requires 328.

Description 25

- 35 **7-(5-Methyl-oxazol-2-yl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine**

Prepared from Description 24 by a similar procedure to that of Description 6.

Mass Spectrum AP⁺: Found 229 (MH⁺). C₁₄H₁₆N₂O requires 228.

Description 26

- 40 **7-Acetyl-3-(*tert*-butyloxycarbonyl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine**

To a stirred solution of 3-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-7-trifluoromethylsulfonyloxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-3-benzazepine (10 g, 25.3 mmol) in anhydrous dimethylformamide (100 ml) under argon at room temperature, was added triethylamine (7.05 ml, 50.6 mmol), butyl vinyl ether (16.4 ml, 126.6 mmol), 1,3-bis(diphenylphosphino)propane (0.412 g, 1 mmol) and palladium acetate (0.202 g, 0.9 mmol) sequentially. The resultant mixture was heated at 85°C for 1.5 h and cooled to room temperature. 4 % Aqueous hydrochloric acid (150 ml) was added and stirring continued for 0.5 h. The reaction mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 300 ml) and the combined organics washed with water (4 x 500 ml), dried (Na₂SO₄) and evaporated *in vacuo* to afford a brown gum. Chromatography on silica gel with 0 - 30% ethyl acetate - hexane gradient elution gave the title compound (5.8 g, 79 %) as a colourless solid.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.49 (9H, s), 2.58 (3H, s), 2.96 (4H, m), 3.57 (4H, m), 7.21 (1H, d, J = 8 Hz), 7.72 (2H, m).

Description 27

3-(*tert*-Butoxycarbonyl)-7-(pyrazin-2-yl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-3-benzazepine

To a stirred solution of 7-acetyl-3-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-3-benzazepine (12 g, 42 mmol) in dioxan (60 ml) was added selenium dioxide (4.61 g, 42 mmol) in dioxan (60 ml) and water (15 ml). The mixture was heated under reflux for 18 h., cooled and the solid residue filtered. The filtrate was evaporated *in vacuo* and the residue azeotroped with toluene to give an orange gum which was dissolved in ethanol and added dropwise to a stirred solution of ethylenediamine (3 g, 50 mmol) in ethanol at 0 °C. After the addition was complete, KOH (2.6 g, 46 mmol) was added and the reaction heated under reflux for 3h. The reaction mixture was then allowed to cool and evaporated *in vacuo*. The residue was partitioned between water and dichloromethane and the combined organic extracts dried and evaporated *in vacuo* to give a brown gum. Purification by silica gel chromatography (eluant 20% EtOAc:hexane) gave the title compound as a yellow oil (3.5 g).

Mass Spectrum AP⁺: Found 226 ([M-Boc]⁺). C₁₉H₂₃N₃O₂ requires 325.

Description 28

7-(Pyrazin-2-yl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-3-benzazepine

Prepared from Description 27 by a similar procedure to that of Description 6.

Mass Spectrum AP⁺: Found 226 (MH⁺). C₁₄H₁₄N₃ requires 225.

Description 29

5-Isoquinolin-1-yl-4-methyl-4*H*-[1,2,4]triazole-3-thiol

Hydroxybenzotriazole (0.078g), 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (0.11 g) and triethylamine were added successively to a cooled solution (0°C) of 4-methyl-3-thiosemicarbazide (0.061g) and 1-isoquinoline carboxylic acid (0.10g) in dimethylformamide (3ml). Following addition the cooling bath was removed

- and the mixture was stirred at room temperature over night and then the reaction mixture was evaporated to dryness. To the residue was added sodium hydroxide solution (0.5 M, 5ml) and the mixture was stirred at 80°C for 3 h. The mixture was cooled to room temperature and the pH adjusted to pH 6 using hydrochloric acid solution (2M) and the resulting precipitate was filtered and dried in vacuo to give the title compound (0.11g, 78%) as an off-white solid.

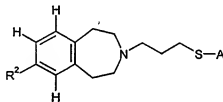
Mass Spectrum AP^+ : Found 243 ($[MH]^+$). $C_{12}H_{10}N_4S$ requires 242.

- 1H NMR (DMSO) δ : 3.65 (3H, s), 7.78 (1H, t, $J = 8$ Hz), 7.89 (1H, t, $J = 8$ Hz), 8.08 (1H, d, $J = 6$ Hz), 8.13 (1H, d, $J = 8$ Hz), 8.51 (1H, d, $J = 8$ Hz), 8.71 (1H, d, $J = 6$ Hz), 14.21 (1H, br s).




















Examples



















- The Compounds of Examples tabulated below were all prepared using the following general method:-
























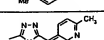

- A mixture of the appropriate chloropropyl benzazepine from Description 20 (1.57 mmol), appropriate thiol (1.57 mmol) and lithium hydroxide (1.57 mmol) in anhydrous DMF (5 ml) were heated at 100°C for 2 h. The cooled reaction mixture was partitioned between water and ethyl acetate, the organic layer dried (Na_2SO_4) and evaporated *in vacuo*. Chromatography on silica gel using 30 - 100% ethyl acetate in hexane gradient elution gave the title compounds.


























Example	R ²	A	Data
1	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (AP^+): Found 473 (MH^+). $C_{23}H_{28}N_4O_3S_2$ requires 472. 1H NMR δ : 1.95 - 2.10 (2H, m), 2.60 - 2.70 (6H, m), 2.85 - 2.95 (4H, m), 3.12 (3H, s), 3.30 - 3.34 (2H, t, $J = 7.2$ Hz), 3.60 (3H, s), 6.95 - 7.05 (2H, m), 7.05 - 7.15 (1H, m), 7.45 - 7.55 (3H, m), 7.60 - 7.70 (2H, m).
2	NC-		Mass spectrum (AP^+): Found 404 (MH^+). $C_{23}H_{25}N_5S$ requires 403.
3			Mass spectrum (AP^+): Found 461 (MH^+). $C_{25}H_{28}N_6OS$ requires 460.

4	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 457 (MH ⁺). C ₂₃ H ₂₈ N ₄ O ₂ S ₂ requires 456.
5	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 518 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₃₁ N ₃ O ₂ S ₂ requires 517.
6	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 508 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₂₉ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 507.
7	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 463 (MH ⁺). C ₂₁ H ₂₆ N ₄ O ₄ S ₂ requires 462.
8	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 479 (MH ⁺). C ₂₁ H ₂₆ N ₄ O ₃ S ₃ requires 478.
9	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 474 (MH ⁺). C ₂₂ H ₂₇ N ₅ O ₃ S ₂ requires 473.
10	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 529 (MH ⁺). C ₂₇ H ₃₆ N ₄ O ₃ S ₂ requires 528.
11	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 478 (MH ⁺). C ₂₁ H ₂₇ N ₅ O ₄ S ₂ requires 477.
12	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 541 (MH ⁺). C ₂₃ H ₂₆ ³⁵ Cl ₂ N ₄ O ₃ S ₂ requires 540.
13	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 524 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₂₉ N ₃ O ₃ S ₂ requires 523.
14	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 491 (MH ⁺). C ₂₂ H ₂₇ FN ₄ O ₃ S ₂ requires 490.
15	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 541 (MH ⁺). C ₂₄ H ₂₇ F ₃ N ₄ O ₃ S ₂ requires 540.
16	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 506 (MH ⁺). C ₂₄ H ₂₈ ³⁵ ClN ₃ O ₃ S ₂ requires 505.
17	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 460 (MH ⁺). C ₂₂ H ₂₃ N ₃ O ₄ S ₂ requires 459.
18	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 433 (MH ⁺). C ₂₁ H ₂₄ N ₂ O ₄ S ₂ requires 432.
19	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 397 (MH ⁺). C ₁₇ H ₂₄ N ₄ O ₃ S ₂ requires 396.
20	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 396 (MH ⁺). C ₁₈ H ₂₃ N ₃ O ₃ S ₂ requires 395.
21	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 410 (MH ⁺). C ₂₀ H ₂₇ NO ₄ S ₂ requires 409.
22	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 534 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₃₁ N ₃ O ₃ S ₂ requires 533.

23	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 432 (MH ⁺). C ₂₁ H ₂₅ N ₃ O ₃ S ₂ requires 431.
24	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 393 (MH ⁺). C ₁₉ H ₂₄ N ₃ O ₃ S ₂ requires 392.
25	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 394 (MH ⁺). C ₁₈ H ₂₃ N ₃ O ₃ S ₂ requires 393.
26	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 443 (MH ⁺). C ₂₃ H ₂₆ N ₃ O ₃ S ₂ requires 442.
27	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 462 (MH ⁺). C ₁₉ H ₂₂ F ₃ N ₃ O ₃ S ₂ requires 461.
28	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 470 (MH ⁺). C ₂₄ H ₂₇ N ₃ O ₃ S ₂ requires 469.
29	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 470 (MH ⁺). C ₂₄ H ₂₇ N ₃ O ₃ S ₂ requires 469.
30	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 555 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₀ N ₆ O ₄ S ₂ requires 554.
31	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 498 (MH ⁺). C ₂₄ H ₂₇ N ₃ O ₃ S ₂ requires 497.
32	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 538 (MH ⁺). C ₂₇ H ₃₁ N ₅ O ₃ S ₂ requires 537.
33	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 524 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₂₉ N ₅ O ₃ S ₂ requires 523.
34	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 541 (MH ⁺). C ₂₄ H ₂₇ F ₃ N ₄ O ₃ S ₂ requires 540.
35	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 490 (MH ⁺). C ₂₄ H ₂₈ FN ₃ O ₃ S ₂ requires 489.
36	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 548 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₃ N ₃ O ₃ S ₂ requires 547.
37	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 491 (MH ⁺). C ₂₃ H ₂₇ FN ₄ O ₃ S ₂ requires 490.
38	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 491 (MH ⁺). C ₂₃ H ₂₇ FN ₄ O ₃ S ₂ requires 490.
39	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 509 (MH ⁺). C ₂₃ H ₂₆ F ₂ N ₄ O ₃ S ₂ requires 508.
40	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 479 (MH ⁺). C ₂₃ H ₃₄ N ₄ O ₃ S ₂ requires 478.



































41	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 475 (MH ⁺). C ₂₃ H ₂₇ FN ₄ O ₂ S ₂ requires 474.
42	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 459 (MH ⁺). C ₂₃ H ₂₆ N ₂ O ₂ S ₂ requires 458.
43	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 501 (MH ⁺). C ₂₅ H ₂₉ FN ₄ O ₂ S ₂ requires 500.
44	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 489 (MH ⁺). C ₂₄ H ₂₉ FN ₄ O ₂ S ₂ requires 488.
45	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 522 (MH ⁺). C ₂₇ H ₃₁ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 521.
46	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 470 (MH ⁺). C ₂₅ H ₃₁ N ₃ O ₂ S ₂ requires 469.
47			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 530 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₂ FN ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 529.
48			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 563 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₃₄ N ₆ O ₂ S ₂ requires 562.
49			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 573 (MH ⁺). C ₃₂ H ₃₆ N ₄ O ₂ S ₂ requires 572.
50			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 546 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₂ FN ₅ O ₃ S ₂ requires 545.
51			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 579 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₃₄ N ₆ O ₃ S ₂ requires 578.
52			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 475 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₂₇ FN ₆ S requires 474.
53			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 508 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₂₉ N ₇ S requires 507.
54	Me ₂ NSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 504 (MH ⁺). C ₂₄ H ₃₀ FN ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 503.
55	Me ₂ NSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 537 (MH ⁺). C ₂₇ H ₃₂ N ₆ O ₂ S ₂ requires 536.
56	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 508 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₂₉ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 507.
57	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 553 (MH ⁺). C ₂₇ H ₃₂ N ₆ O ₃ S ₂ requires 552.
58	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 536 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₃₃ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 535.



































59	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 515 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₁ FN ₄ O ₂ S ₂ requires 514.
60	Me		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 478 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₂₈ FN ₅ OS requires 477.
61	Me		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 511 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₃₀ N ₆ OS requires 510.
62	Me		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 478 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₂₈ FN ₅ OS requires 477.
63	Me		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 511 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₃₀ N ₆ OS requires 510.
64			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 577 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₆ N ₆ O ₂ S ₂ requires 576.
65			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 544 (MH ⁺). C ₂₇ H ₃₄ FN ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 543.
66	PhSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 570 (MH ⁺). C ₃₁ H ₃₁ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 569.
67	PhSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 555 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₂₈ F ₂ N ₄ O ₂ S ₂ requires 554.
68	PhSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 537 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₂₉ FN ₄ O ₂ S ₂ requires 536.
69			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 534 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₉ N ₅ O ₃ S ₂ requires 533.
70			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 564 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₁ F ₂ N ₅ O ₃ S ₂ requires 563.
71			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 578 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₅ N ₅ O ₃ S ₂ requires 577.
72	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 496 (MH ⁺). C ₂₅ H ₂₉ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 495.
73	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 522 (MH ⁺). C ₂₇ H ₃₁ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 521.
74	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 510 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₁ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 509.
75	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 496 (MH ⁺). C ₂₅ H ₂₉ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 495.
76	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 501 (MH ⁺). C ₂₅ H ₂₉ FN ₄ O ₂ S ₂ requires 500.

















77	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 507 (MH ⁺). C ₂₇ H ₃₀ N ₄ O ₂ S ₂ requires 506.
78	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 513 (MH ⁺). C ₂₅ H ₂₈ N ₄ O ₂ S ₃ requires 512.
79	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 510 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₁ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 509.
80	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 497 (MH ⁺). C ₂₅ H ₂₈ N ₄ O ₃ S ₂ requires 496.
81	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 496 (MH ⁺). C ₂₅ H ₂₉ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 495.
82	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 510 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₁ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 509.
83	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 496 (MH ⁺). C ₂₅ H ₂₉ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 495.
84	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 539 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₀ N ₆ O ₃ S ₂ requires 538.
85	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 496 (MH ⁺). C ₂₅ H ₂₉ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 495.
86	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 513 (MH ⁺). C ₂₅ H ₂₈ N ₄ O ₂ S ₃ requires 512.
87	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 514 (MH ⁺). C ₂₄ H ₂₇ N ₅ O ₂ S ₃ requires 513.
88	MeSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 471 (MH ⁺). C ₂₄ H ₃₀ N ₄ O ₂ S ₂ requires 470.
89	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 510 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₁ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 509.
90	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 510 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₁ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 509.
91	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 527 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₀ N ₄ O ₂ S ₃ requires 526.
92	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 477 (MH ⁺). C ₂₄ H ₃₆ N ₄ O ₂ S ₂ requires 476.
93	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 510 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₁ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 509.
94	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 536 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₃₃ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 535.

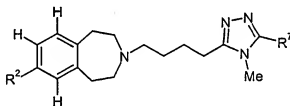
95	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 511 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₀ N ₄ O ₃ S ₂ requires 510.
96	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 511 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₀ N ₄ O ₃ S ₂ requires 510.
97	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 521 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₃₂ N ₄ O ₂ S ₂ requires 520.
98	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 457 (MH ⁺). C ₂₃ H ₂₈ N ₄ O ₂ S ₂ requires 456.
99	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 524 (MH ⁺). C ₂₇ H ₃₃ N ₃ O ₂ S ₂ requires 523.
100	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 511 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₀ N ₄ O ₃ S ₂ requires 510.
101	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 488 (MH ⁺). C ₂₅ H ₃₀ FN ₃ O ₂ S ₂ requires 487.
102	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 510 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₁ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 509.
103	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 507 (MH ⁺). C ₂₄ H ₂₈ F ₂ N ₄ O ₂ S ₂ requires 506.
104	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 470 (MH ⁺). C ₂₅ H ₃₁ N ₃ O ₂ S ₂ requires 469.
105	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 552 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₃₃ N ₅ O ₃ S ₂ requires 551.
106	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 527 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₀ N ₄ O ₂ S ₃ requires 526.
107	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 510 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₁ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 509.
108	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 549 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₃₂ N ₆ O ₂ S ₂ requires 548.
109	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 510 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₁ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 509.
110	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 496 (MH ⁺). C ₂₅ H ₂₉ N ₃ O ₂ S ₂ requires 495.
111	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 524 (MH ⁺). C ₂₇ H ₃₃ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 523.
112	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 522 (MH ⁺). C ₂₇ H ₃₁ N ₅ O ₂ S ₂ requires 521.

113	EtSO ₂ -		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 488 (MH ⁺). C ₂₅ H ₃₀ FN ₃ O ₂ S ₂ requires 487.
114			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 558 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₃₆ FN ₃ O ₂ S ₂ requires 557.
115			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 591 (MH ⁺). C ₃₁ H ₃₈ N ₆ O ₂ S ₂ requires 590.
116			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 574 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₁ N ₃ O ₃ S ₂ requires 573.
117			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 527 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₂₇ FN ₄ O ₃ S ₂ requires 526.
118			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 545 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₂₆ F ₂ N ₄ O ₃ S ₂ requires 544.
119			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 560 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₂₉ N ₅ O ₃ S ₂ requires 559.
120	MeSO ₂ O-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 524 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₂₉ N ₅ O ₃ S ₂ requires 523.
121			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 527 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₄ N ₆ OS requires 526.
122			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 541 (MH ⁺). C ₃₁ H ₃₆ N ₆ OS requires 540.
123	Et ₃ N-		Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 529 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₆ N ₆ OS requires 528.
124			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 501 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₃₂ N ₆ OS requires 500.
125			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 478 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₂₈ FN ₃ OS requires 477.
126			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 511 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₃₀ N ₆ OS requires 510.
127			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 525 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₂ N ₆ OS requires 524.
128			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 525 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₂ N ₆ OS requires 524.
129			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 496 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₂₇ F ₂ N ₅ OS requires 495.
130			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 525 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₂ N ₆ OS requires 524.

131			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 496 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₂₇ F ₂ N ₅ OS requires 495.
132			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 499 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₃₀ N ₆ OS requires 498.
133			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 525 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₂ N ₆ OS requires 524.
134			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 500 (MH ⁺). C ₂₇ H ₂₉ N ₇ OS requires 499.
135			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 529 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₂₉ FN ₆ OS requires 528.
136			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 466 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₃₅ N ₅ OS requires 465.
137			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 543 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₁ FN ₆ OS requires 542.
138			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 485 (MH ⁺). C ₂₇ H ₂₈ N ₆ OS requires 484.
139			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 516 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₂₉ N ₅ OS ₂ requires 515.
140			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 499 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₃₀ N ₆ OS requires 498.
141			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 510 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₁ N ₅ OS requires 509.
142			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 516 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₂₉ N ₅ OS ₂ requires 515.
143			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 540 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₃ N ₇ OS requires 539.
144			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 499 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₃₀ N ₆ OS requires 498.
145			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 485 (MH ⁺). C ₂₇ H ₂₈ N ₆ OS requires 484.
146			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 512 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₂₉ N ₇ OS requires 511.
147			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 500 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₂₉ N ₅ O ₂ S requires 499.

148			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 510 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₁ N ₅ OS requires 509.
149			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 559 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₁ ³⁵ ClN ₆ OS requires 558.
150			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 513 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₃₂ N ₆ OS requires 512.
151			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 500 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₂₉ N ₅ O ₂ S requires 499.
152			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 511 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₃₀ N ₆ OS requires 510.
153			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 511 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₃₀ N ₆ OS requires 510.
154			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 526 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₃₁ N ₇ OS requires 525.
155			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 513 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₃₂ N ₆ OS requires 512.
156			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 499 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₃₀ N ₆ OS requires 498.
157			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 511 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₃₀ N ₆ OS requires 510.
158			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 512 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₂₉ N ₇ OS requires 511.
159			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 489 (MH ⁺). C ₂₇ H ₃₂ N ₆ OS requires 488.
160			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 510 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₁ N ₅ OS requires 509.
161			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 527 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₃₀ N ₆ O ₂ S requires 526.
162			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 500 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₂₉ N ₅ O ₂ S requires 499.
163			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 512 (MH ⁺). C ₂₈ H ₂₉ N ₇ OS requires 511.
164			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 511 (MH ⁺). C ₂₉ H ₃₀ N ₆ OS requires 510.

165			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 489 (MH ⁺). C ₂₇ H ₃₂ N ₆ OS requires 488.
166			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 544 (MNa ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₁ N ₇ S requires 521.
167			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 544 (MNa ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₁ N ₇ S requires 521.
168			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 525 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₂ N ₆ OS requires 524.
169			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 525 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₂ N ₆ OS requires 524.
170			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 496 (MH ⁺). C ₂₆ H ₂₇ F ₂ N ₅ OS requires 495.
171			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 525 (MH ⁺). C ₃₀ H ₃₂ N ₆ OS requires 524.
172			Mass spectrum (API ⁺): Found 537 (MH ⁺). C ₃₁ H ₃₂ N ₆ OS requires 536.



Example 173

- 7-(5-Methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-3-{4-[4-methyl-5-(2-methyl-quinolin-6-yl)-4 H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-yl]-butyl}-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine

a) 4-[1,3]Dioxan-2-yl-butyric acid methyl ester

- Methyl 5,5-dimethoxyvalerate (20.0g, 0.114mol), propane-1,3-diol (13g, 0.17mol) and para-toluene sulphonic acid (2.17g, 0.0114mol) were heated under Dean-Stark conditions in toluene (100ml) for 4 h. The mixture was cooled to room temperature and diluted with diethyl ether (100ml) and then neutralized with solid sodium bicarbonate. The solid was filtered and the filtrate evaporated to give a pale yellow oil (22.3g). A 10g portion of this was then purified by silica gel chromatography (eluent 30% EtOAc:hexane) which gave the title compound as a colourless oil (6.82g).

b) 4-[1,3]Dioxan-2-yl-butyric acid

4-[1,3]Dioxan-2-yl-butyric acid methyl ester (6.8g, 0.036mol) was added to a stirred solution of sodium hydroxide (1.87g, 0.047mol) in water (30ml) and methanol (30ml). The mixture was stirred for 18 h at room temperature and then the solvent evaporated. The residue was partitioned between ethyl acetate (100ml) and water (100ml) and cooled to 0°C. The mixture was acidified with hydrochloric acid (1M) to pH 2 and the layers separated. The aqueous layer was further extracted with cold ethyl acetate (100ml) and the combined organic layers washed with brine (100ml) and then dried (Na₂SO₄). The solvents were evaporated and the crude solid (5.56g) was used in the next step.

c) 4-[1,3]Dioxan-2-yl-N-methyl-butyramide

To 4-[1,3]dioxan-2-yl-butyric acid (2.55g, 0.015mol) in dichloromethane (200 ml) was added methylamine (2M in THF, 8.1 ml, 0.016mol), 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (3.09g, 0.016mol) and hydroxybenzotriazole (2.16g, 0.016mol) and the mixture stirred at room temperature overnight. The organic layer was washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (200ml) and the aqueous layer extracted with dichloromethane (4 x 50ml). The combined organics were dried (Na₂SO₄) and evaporated to give a colourless oil (3.2g)

Mass Spectrum AP⁺: Found 188 ([MH]⁺). C₉H₁₇NO₃ requires 187.

d) 2-Methyl-quinoline-6-carboxylic acid N'-(4-[1,3]dioxan-2-yl-1-methylimino-butyl)-hydrazide

4-[1,3]Dioxan-2-yl-N-methyl-butyramide (1g, 5.35mmol) was cooled to -78°C in dry dichloromethane (10ml) under argon and phosphorus oxychloride (0.65ml, 7mmol) was added dropwise. The mixture was warmed to room temperature to give an amber solution which was re-cooled to 0°C. This solution was added dropwise to a suspension of 2-methyl-quinoline-6-carboxylic acid hydrazide (1g, 5mmol) in chloroform (20ml) and the mixture stirred at room temperature overnight. The mixture was poured into water (300ml), basified with sodium hydroxide solution (5M) and extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 200ml). The combined organic portions were dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered and evaporated to give the desired compound as a brown oil (1.28g, 83%).

Mass Spectrum AP⁺: Found 369 ([M-H]). C₂₀H₂₆N₄O₃ requires 370.

e) 6-[5-(3-[1,3]Dioxan-2-yl-propyl)-4-methyl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-yl]-2-methyl-quinoline

2-Methyl-quinoline-6-carboxylic acid N'-(4-[1,3]dioxan-2-yl-1-methylimino-butyl)-hydrazide (1.28g, 3.4mmol) was heated in ethyl acetate (20ml) for 4 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (eluent 20% MeOH:EtOAc) which gave the title compound as a brown solid (109mg, 10%).

Mass Spectrum AP^+ : Found 353 ($[MH]^+$). $C_{20}H_{24}N_4O_2$ requires 352.

5 f) 4-[4-Methyl-5-(2-methyl-quinolin-6-yl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-yl]-butyraldehyde 6-[5-(3-[1,3]Dioxan-2-yl-propyl)-4-methyl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-yl]-2-methyl-quinoline (109mg, 0.31mmol) was heated in water (20ml) and concentrated sulphuric acid (0.5ml) at 100°C for 3 h. The mixture was cooled to room temperature, basified with solid sodium bicarbonate and extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 50ml). The combined organic portions were dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and evaporated to give the desired compound as an off-white solid (76mg, 84%).

10 Mass Spectrum AP^+ : Found 295 ($[MH]^+$). $C_{17}H_{18}N_4O$ requires 294.

g) 7-(5-Methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-3-{4-[4-methyl-5-(2-methyl-quinolin-6-yl)-4 H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-yl]-butyl}-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine

15 4-[4-Methyl-5-(2-methyl-quinolin-6-yl)-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-yl]-butyraldehyde (76mg, 0.25mmol) and 7-(5-Methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine (55mg, 0.24mmol) were stirred at room temperature in dichloromethane (5ml) for 30 min. Sodium triacetoxyborohydride (55mg, 0.26mmol) was then added and the mixture stirred over the weekend. The mixture was diluted with dichloromethane (50ml) and washed
20 with saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (30ml). The aqueous was extracted with further dichloromethane (50ml) and the combined organic portions were dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and evaporated to give the desired compound as an off-white solid (26mg).

Mass Spectrum AP^+ : Found 507 ($[MH]^+$). $C_{31}H_{34}N_6O$ requires 506.

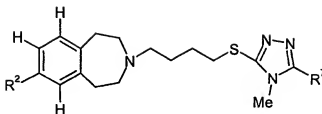
25 1H NMR ($CDCl_3$) δ : 1.72 (2H, m), 1.93 (2H, m), 2.46 (3H, s), 2.57 (3H, t, $J = 7$ Hz), 2.66 (4H, m), 2.79 (3H, s), 2.91 (6H, m), 3.64 (3H, s), 6.26 (1H, s), 7.16 (1H, d, $J = 8$ Hz), 7.37 (1H, d, $J = 9$ Hz), 7.49 (1H, dd, $J = 2, 8$ Hz), 7.54 (1H, s), 7.89 (1H, dd, $J = 2, 9$ Hz), 8.11 (3H, m).

30 *The following compound was prepared in a similar manner to example 173:*

Example 174

3-{4-[5-(4-Fluoro-phenyl)-4-methyl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-yl]-butyl}-7-(5-methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine

35 Mass spectrum (API^+): Found 460 (MH^+). $C_{27}H_{30}N_5OF$ requires 459.

**Example 175**

7-Ethanesulfonyl-3-[4-(4-methyl-5-quinolin-6-yl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-butyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine

5

a) 6-{5-[3-(5,5-Dimethyl-[1,3]dioxan-2-yl)-propylsulfanyl]-4-methyl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-yl}-quinoline

4-Methyl-5-quinolin-6-yl-4H-[1,2,4]triazole-3-thiol (0.5g, 2.07mmol), 2-(3-Bromo-propyl)-5,5-dimethyl-[1,3]dioxane (0.49g, 2.07mmol) and lithium hydroxide (50mg) were heated in dimethylformamide at 100°C for 3 h. The mixture was cooled and partitioned between water (80 ml) and ethyl acetate (100ml). The layers were separated and the aqueous re-extracted with ethyl acetate (100ml). The combined organic portions were washed with brine (100ml) and then dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered and evaporated to give a colourless oil. Purification by silica gel chromatography (eluent EtOAc - 10%

15 MeOH:EtOAc) which gave the title compound as a colourless solid (0.53g, 65%).

Mass Spectrum AP⁺: Found 399 ([MH]⁺). C₂₁H₂₆N₄SO₂ requires 398.

b) 4-(4-Methyl-5-quinolin-6-yl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-butyraldehyde

20 6-{5-[3-(5,5-Dimethyl-[1,3]dioxan-2-yl)-propylsulfanyl]-4-methyl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-yl}-quinoline (0.51g, 1.28mmol) was heated in water (30ml) and sulphuric acid (1.92mmol) at 100°C for 3 h. The mixture was cooled and basified with sodium carbonate. The aqueous mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 50ml) and the combined organic portions were dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered and evaporated to give the title compound as a colourless oil (0.38g, 95%).

25

Mass Spectrum AP⁺: Found 313 ([MH]⁺). C₁₆H₁₆N₄SO requires 312.

c) 7-Ethanesulfonyl-3-[4-(4-methyl-5-quinolin-6-yl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-butyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine

30 4-(4-Methyl-5-quinolin-6-yl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-butyraldehyde (0.1g, 0.32mmol) and 7-Ethanesulfonyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine (0.11g, 0.45mmol) were stirred at room temperature in dichloromethane (4ml) for 20 min. Sodium triacetoxyborohydride (71mg, 0.34mmol) was then added and the mixture stirred overnight. The mixture was diluted with dichloromethane (50ml) and washed with

35

saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (30ml). The aqueous was extracted with further dichloromethane (50ml) and the combined organic portions were dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and evaporated to give a yellow oil. Purification by silica gel chromatography (eluent 10% MeOH:EtOAc) which gave the title compound as a colourless oil (35mg, 21%).

5

Mass Spectrum AP^+ : Found 536 ($[\text{MH}]^+$). $\text{C}_{28}\text{H}_{33}\text{N}_5\text{S}_2\text{O}_2$ requires 535.

^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ : 1.28 (3H, t, $J = 7$ Hz), 1.71 (2H, m), 1.90 (2H, m), 2.54 (2H, t, $J = 7$ Hz), 2.65 (4H, m), 2.99 (4H, m), 3.10 (2H, t, 7 Hz), 3.37 (2H, t, $J = 7$ Hz), 3.69 (3H, s), 7.26 (1H, d, $J = 8$ Hz), 7.50 (1H, m), 7.61 (1H, s), 7.64 (1H, d, $J = 8$ Hz), 7.97 (1H, d, $J = 8$ Hz), 8.16 (1H, s), 8.24 (2H, d, $J = 9$ Hz), 9.00 (1H, m).

10

The following compounds were prepared in a similar manner to Description 175:

15

Example 176

7-(5-Methyl-isoxazol-3-yl)-3-[4-(4-methyl-5-quinolin-6-yl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-butyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine

20

Mass Spectrum AP^+ : Found 525 ($[\text{MH}]^+$). $\text{C}_{30}\text{H}_{32}\text{N}_6\text{SO}$ requires 524.

Example 177

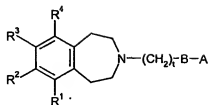
7-(3-Methyl-isoxazol-5-yl)-3-[4-(4-methyl-5-quinolin-6-yl-4H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-butyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[d]azepine

25

Mass Spectrum AP^+ : Found 525 ($[\text{MH}]^+$). $\text{C}_{30}\text{H}_{32}\text{N}_6\text{SO}$ requires 524.

CLAIMS

1. A compound of formula (I):



Formula (I)

- 5 wherein:

R^2 and R^3 independently represent:

- a hydrogen or halogen atom; a hydroxy, cyano, nitro, oxime, C_{1-4} alkyl, C_{1-4} alkoxy, aryl C_{1-4} alkoxy, C_{1-4} alkylthio, C_{1-4} alkoxycarbonyl, C_{1-4} alkylsulfonyl, C_{3-6} cycloalkyl C_{1-4} alkoxy, C_{1-4} alkanoyl, C_{1-4} alkoxycarbonyl, C_{1-4} alkylsulfonyl, C_{1-4} alkylsulfonyloxy, C_{1-4} alkylsulfonyl C_{1-4} alkyl, arylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyloxy, arylsulfonyl C_{1-4} alkyl, C_{1-4} alkylsulfonamido, C_{1-4} alkylamido, C_{1-4} alkylsulfonamido C_{1-4} alkyl, C_{1-4} alkylamido C_{1-4} alkyl, arylsulfonamido, arylcarboxamido, arylsulfonamido C_{1-4} alkyl, arylcarboxamido C_{1-4} alkyl, aroyl, aroyl C_{1-4} alkyl, or aryl C_{1-4} alkanoyl group;
- 15 a group $R^5OCO(CH_2)_p$, $R^5CON(R^6)(CH_2)_p$, $R^5R^6NCO(CH_2)_p$ or $R^5R^6NSO_2(CH_2)_p$, in which p represents zero or an integer from 1 to 4, and each of R^5 and R^6 independently represents a hydrogen atom or a C_{1-4} alkyl group, or R^5CONR^6 or R^5R^6N together form a 4-, 5-, 6- or 7-membered azacyclic group optionally containing one additional O, N or S atom in the azacycle and having 3-8 carbon atoms; or
- 20 a group Ar^3-Z , wherein Ar^3 represents an optionally substituted phenyl ring or an optionally substituted 5- or 6- membered aromatic heterocyclic ring and Z represents a bond, O, S, SO_2 , or CH_2 ;

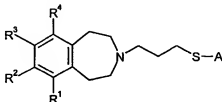
- R^1 and R^4 independently represent H, F, Cl, Br, C_{1-2} alkyl, C_1 alkoxy, OH, CN, or NO_2 ;

B represents a sulfur atom or a $-CH_2-$ group; and

- A represents an optionally substituted 5- or 6- membered aromatic heterocyclic ring, or an optionally substituted bicyclic heterocyclic ring system in which at least the ring bound to the group B in Formula (I) is aromatic;

- 30 or a salt thereof.

2. A compound of formula (IA) or a salt thereof:



Formula (IA)

5 wherein R^1 to R^4 and A are as defined in claim 1.

3. A compound or salt as claimed in claim 1 or claim 2 wherein A is selected from one of the groups (i), (ii) or (iii):



(i)



(ii)



(iii)

10 wherein:

X^1 and X^2 are independently N or CR^8 , and X^3 is NR^8 , O or S;

Y^1 and Y^3 are independently N or CR^9 , and Y^2 is NR^9 , O or S;

15 Z^1 is NR^{10} , O or S, and Z^2 and Z^3 are independently N or CR^{10} ;

and wherein:

R^7 is H, a halogen atom, OH, cyano, nitro, C_{1-4} alkyl, C_{1-4} alkoxy, C_{1-4} alkylenedioxy, C_{1-4} alkanoyl, or C_{1-4} alkylsulfonyl, an optionally substituted 3-, 4-, 5- or 6-membered cycloalkyl ring, or a group of the formula (a), (b), (c) or (d):



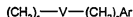
(a)



(b)



(c)



(d)

in which:

Ar represents an optionally substituted phenyl ring or an optionally substituted 5- or 6- membered aromatic heterocyclic ring; or an optionally substituted bicyclic ring system,

Ar¹ and Ar² each represent an optionally substituted phenyl ring or an optionally substituted 5- or 6- membered aromatic heterocyclic ring, and Y represents a bond, -NHCO-, -CONH-, -CH₂-, or -(CH₂)_mY^A(CH₂)_n-, wherein Y^A represents O, S, SO₂, or CO and m and n each represent zero or 1 such that the sum of m+n is zero or 1,

r and s independently represent an integer from zero to 3 such that the sum of r and s is equal to an integer from 1 to 4, and V represents a bond, O or S; and

R⁹ is H, a halogen atom, OH, cyano, nitro, C_{1-4} alkyl, C_{1-4} alkoxy, C_{1-4} alkylenedioxy, C_{1-4} alkanoyl, or C_{1-4} alkylsulfonyl, an optionally substituted 3-, 4-, 5- or 6-membered cycloalkyl ring, or a group of the formula (a), (b), (c) or (d) as defined herein, provided that R⁹ is not a halogen atom, OH, cyano, nitro, C_{1-4} alkoxy or C_{1-4} alkylenedioxy when R⁹ is linked to N;

or R⁹ together with R⁷ and the intervening atoms of the 5-membered heterocyclic ring illustrated in groups (i), (ii) or (iii) form part of an optionally substituted 5-, 6-, or 7-membered carbocyclic or heterocyclic ring;

and wherein:

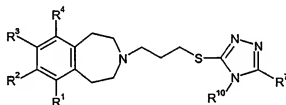
- 5 R⁸ is H, OH or C₁₋₂alkyl, provided that R⁸ is H or C₁₋₂alkyl when R⁸ is linked to N;

- R¹⁰ is H, OH, C₁₋₆alkyl, hydroxy-substituted C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₂alkoxyC₁₋₄alkyl, phenylC₁₋₄alkyl, a 3-, 4-, 5- or 6-membered cycloalkyl ring, or phenyl; wherein in phenyl, phenylC₁₋₄alkyl or cycloalkyl the ring is optionally substituted by one or two
10 fluoro or C₁alkyl groups; and provided that R¹⁰ is not OH when R¹⁰ is linked to N.

4. A compound or salt as claimed in claim 3 wherein in the groups (i), (ii) or (iii) one or both of X¹/X²/X³ and Y¹/Y²/Y³ are or contain a ring heteroatom.

- 15 5. A compound or salt as claimed in claim 3 or 4 wherein:
X¹ and X² are independently N or CR⁸, and X³ is NR⁸;
Y¹ and Y³ are independently N or CR⁹, and Y² is NR⁹; and
Z¹ is NR¹⁰, and Z² and Z³ are independently N.

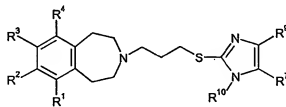
- 20 6. A compound of formula (IB) or a salt thereof:



Formula (IB)

- 25 wherein R¹ to R⁴ are as defined in claim 1 and R⁷ and R¹⁰ are as defined in claim 3.

7. A compound of formula (IC) or a salt thereof:

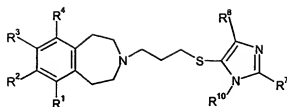


Formula (IC)

30

wherein R¹ to R⁴ are as defined in claim 1 and R⁷, R⁹ and R¹⁰ are as defined in claim 3.

8. A compound of Formula (ID) or a salt thereof:



Formula (II)

5 wherein R¹ to R⁴ are as defined in claim 1 and R⁷, R⁸ and R¹⁰ are as defined in claim 3.

9. A compound or salt as claimed in any one of claims 1 to 8 wherein:
 in any groups of the formula (a), (b), (c) or (d) in R⁷ or R⁹, the rings or ring systems Ar,
 Ar¹ or Ar² are each independently optionally substituted by one or more substituents
 10 selected from: a halogen atom, or a hydroxy, oxo, cyano, nitro, C₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₄alkoxy,
 C₁₋₄alkylenedioxy, C₁₋₄alkanoyl, C₁₋₄alkylsulfonyl, C₁₋₄alkylsulfonyloxy,
 C₁₋₄alkylsulfinyl, C₁₋₄alkylthio, R¹³SO₂N(R¹⁴), R¹³R¹⁴NSO₂, R¹³R¹⁴N-,
 R¹³R¹⁴NCO-, or R¹³CON(R¹⁴)- group wherein each of R¹³ and R¹⁴ independently
 15 represents a hydrogen atom or a C₁₋₄ alkyl group, or R¹³R¹⁴ together form a C₃₋₆
 alkylene chain; and wherein in the rings Ar and Ar² any substituents positioned *ortho* to
 one another may optionally be linked to form a 5- or 6- membered ring;
 and wherein any 3-, 4-, 5- or 6-membered cycloalkyl ring in R⁷ and R⁹ is
 independently optionally substituted by one or two F or C₁₋₂ alkyl groups or a R¹⁵R¹⁶N-
 group, wherein each of R¹⁵ and R¹⁶ independently represents a hydrogen atom or a C₁₋₄
 20 alkyl group, or R¹⁵R¹⁶ together form a C₃₋₆ alkylene chain.

10. A compound or salt as claimed in any one of claims 1 to 9 wherein R⁷ is a group
 of the formula (a), (b), (c) or (d), or is an optionally substituted 3-, 4-, 5- or 6-membered
 cycloalkyl ring.

25

11. A compound or salt as claimed in claim 10 wherein R⁷ is a group of the formula
 (a) or (b).

12. A compound or salt as claimed in claim 11 wherein R⁷ is a group of the formula
 30 (a) being an optionally substituted phenyl ring or optionally substituted quinoliny ring
 system; or R⁷ is a group of formula (b) wherein Ar¹ is optionally substituted phenyl, Y is
 a bond and Ar² is optionally substituted phenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, or a 5-membered
 heterocyclic aromatic ring containing at least one N and one O atom.

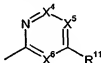
13. A compound or salt as claimed in any one of claims 1 to 12 wherein R⁹ is H or a
 group of the formula (a).

14. A compound or salt as claimed in any one of claims 1 to 13 wherein:
 R² represents a substituent selected from: a halogen atom, cyano, acetyl, trifluoromethyl,
 40 pentafluoroethyl, trifluoromethoxy, C₁₋₄alkylsulfonyl, C₁₋₄alkylsulfonyloxy; a

$R^5R^6NSO_2$ group where each of R^5 and R^6 independently represents a hydrogen atom or a C_{1-4} alkyl group, or R^5R^6N together form a 4-, 5-, 6- or 7-membered azacyclic group optionally containing one additional O, N or S atom in the azacycle and having 3-8 carbon atoms; or a group Ar^3Z , where Z is a bond and Ar^3 is an optionally substituted 5- or 6-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring.

15. A compound or salt as claimed in any one of claims 1 to 14 wherein R^1 , R^3 , and R^4 are all H.

16. A compound or salt as claimed in claim 1 wherein A is group (iv):



(iv)

where R^{11} is as defined for R^7 in claim 3; X^4 is CR^{12a} or N, X^5 is CR^{12b} or N, and X^6 is CR^{12c} or N provided that both X^4 and X^5 are not N;

and wherein $R^{12a,b,c}$, independently of each other, are H, a halogen atom, or a hydroxy, oxo, cyano, nitro, C_{1-4} alkyl, C_{1-4} alkoxy, C_{1-4} alkylenedioxy, C_{1-4} alkanoyl, or C_{1-4} alkylsulfonyl group; a group of the formula (a), (b), (c), or (d) as defined in claim 3; or a non-aromatic 3-, 4-, 5-, 6-, or 7-membered heterocyclic or carbocyclic ring optionally substituted by one or two F or C_{1-2} alkyl groups or a $R^{15}R^{16}N$ - group, wherein each of R^{15} and R^{16} independently represents a hydrogen atom or a C_{1-4} alkyl group or $R^{15}R^{16}$ together form a C_{3-6} alkylene chain;

and/or wherein either (a) X^4 and X^5 , or (b) X^5 , R^{11} and the intervening carbon atom, or (c) X^6 , R^{11} and the intervening carbon atom, together form part of an optionally substituted 5-, 6-, or 7-membered carbocyclic or heterocyclic ring.

17. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound of formula (I) as defined in any one of claims 1 to 16, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

18. A compound of formula (I) as defined in any one of claims 1 to 16 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof for use as an active therapeutic substance in a mammal.

19. The use of a compound of formula (I) as defined in any one of claims 1 to 16 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof in the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of a condition in a mammal for which modulation of dopamine D_3 receptors is beneficial.

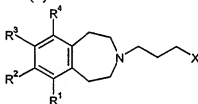
20. The use of a compound of formula (I) as defined in any one of claims 1 to 16 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof in the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of a psychotic condition or substance abuse in a mammal.

21. The use as claimed in claim 21 wherein the psychotic condition is schizophrenia.

22. A method of treating a condition for which modulation of dopamine D₃ receptors is beneficial, which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof an effective amount of a compound of formula (I) as defined in any one of claims 1 to 16 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

23. A method of treating a psychotic condition or substance abuse which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof an effective amount of a compound of formula (I) as defined in any one of claims 1 to 16 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

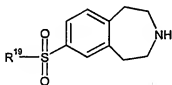
24. A compound of formula (II):



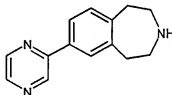
Formula (II)

wherein R¹ to R⁴ are as defined in any one of claims 1 to 16 provided that R¹ to R⁴ are not all H, and X is a leaving group.

25. A compound of Formula (X) or (XI):



Formula (X)



Formula (XI)

where R¹⁹ = ethyl, N,N-dimethylamino, pyrrolidin-1-yl, or 1,4-morpholin-4-yl;

or a secondary-amine-protected derivative thereof, or a salt of the compound or derivative.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No.

PC. 01/13140

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC 7 C07D463/12 C07D461/14 C07D465/14 C07D469/14 C07D413/14
 C07D413/12 C07D465/12 C07D461/12 C07D417/12 C07D493/14
 C07D495/04 C07D223/16 C07D463/04 A61K31/55 A61P25/18

-According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

IPC 7 C07D

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the International search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

EPO-Internal, WPI Data, PAJ, BEILSTEIN Data, CHEM ABS Data

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
Y	<p>AUSTIN N E ET AL: "Novel 2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepines with high affinity and selectivity for the dopamine D3 receptor" BIOORGANIC & MEDICINAL CHEMISTRY LETTERS, OXFORD, GB, [Online] vol. 10, no. 22, 20 November 2000 (2000-11-20), pages 2553-2555, XP004224262 ISSN: 0960-894X cited in the application * available online (www.sciencedirect.com) on 31.10.00 * the whole document</p> <p style="text-align: center;">---</p> <p style="text-align: center;">-/--</p>	<p>1-6, 9-15, 17-23</p>

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.☒ Patent family members are listed in annex.

* Special categories of cited documents :

A document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance

E earlier document but published on or after the international filing date

L document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (see specification)

O document relating to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means

P document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

T later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

X document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

Y document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art

Z document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

26 February 2002

Date of mailing of the international search report

10.05.02

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5618 Patentlaan 2
 NL-2280 HV Rijswijk
 Tel (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx 31 651 epo nl,
 Fax (+31-70) 340-3010

Authorized officer

Johnson, C

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No.

PC/PCTP 81/13140

C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT		
Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
Y	WO 00 42036 A (NEUMANN SCHULTZ BARBARA ; BASF AG (DE); UNGER LILIANE (DE); BLUMBAC) 20 July 2000 (2000-07-20) cited in the application claims ---	1-6, 9-15, 17-23
A	WO 00 21951 A (JOHNSON CHRISTOPHER NORBERT ; VONG ANTONIO KUOK KEONG (GB); STENG G) 20 April 2000 (2000-04-20) cited in the application claim 1 ---	1-23
A	US 4 352 754 A (WEINSTOCK JOSEPH) 5 October 1982 (1982-10-05) column 1, line 48 -column 2, line 4 ---	1-23
A	US 4 233 217 A (SHETTY BOLA V) 11 November 1980 (1980-11-11) column 1, line 16 -column 2, line 28 -----	1-23

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.
PCT/EP 01/13140**Box I** Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)

This International Search Report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1. ☒ Claims Nos.:
because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:
Although claims 22,23 are directed to a method of treatment of the human/animal body, the search has been carried out and based on the alleged effects of the compound/composition.
2. ☐ Claims Nos.:
because they relate to parts of the International Application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful International Search can be carried out, specifically:
3. ☐ Claims Nos.:
because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this International application, as follows:

see additional sheet

1. ☐ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers all searchable claims.
2. ☐ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
3. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4. ☒ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this International Search Report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

1 - 23

Remark on Protest

- ☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.
- ☐ No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/ISA 210

This International Searching Authority found multiple (groups of) inventions in this international application, as follows:

1. Claims: 1-23

Compounds of formula (I), their pharmaceutical compositions and uses.

2. Claims: 24 (part), 25

Intermediates of formula (II) wherein the 7-substituent is as defined in claim 25, intermediates of formulae (X) and (XI).

3. Claim : 24 (part)

Intermediates of formula (II) wherein the 7-substituent is other than that defined in claim 25.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

information on patent family members

International Application No.

PC17EP 61/13140

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 0042636	A	20-07-2000	AU 2289700 A 01-08-2000
			AU 2436700 A 01-08-2000
			AU 2541200 A 01-08-2000
			BG 105783 A 29-03-2002
			BG 105784 A 28-02-2002
			BR 0007500 A 23-10-2001
			BR 0007504 A 02-10-2001
			CN 1345319 T 17-04-2002
			CN 1345318 T 17-04-2002
			CZ 20012550 A3 13-02-2002
			CZ 20012551 A3 13-03-2002
			WO 0042038 A1 20-07-2000
			WO 0042037 A1 20-07-2000
			WO 0042036 A1 20-07-2000
			EP 1140907 A1 10-10-2001
			EP 1140908 A1 10-10-2001
			EP 1144405 A1 17-10-2001
			NO 20013443 A 12-07-2001
			NO 20013444 A 11-07-2001
			TR 200102026 T2 21-12-2001
WO 0021951	A	20-04-2000	AU 1038100 A 01-05-2000
			BG 105467 A 30-11-2001
			BR 9914370 A 27-11-2001
			CN 1329609 T 02-01-2002
			CZ 20011270 A3 12-09-2001
			WO 0021951 A1 20-04-2000
			EP 1119563 A1 01-08-2001
			NO 20011745 A 06-06-2001
			SK 4782001 A3 06-11-2001
			TR 200101025 T2 21-09-2001
US 4352754	A	05-10-1982	US 4255422 A 10-03-1981
			US 4160765 A 10-07-1979
			US 4359464 A 16-11-1982
			AR 224495 A1 15-12-1981
			AT 362379 B 11-05-1981
			AT 816377 A 15-10-1980
			AU 509754 B2 22-05-1980
			AU 3062677 A 24-05-1979
			BE 860774 A1 16-05-1978
			BG 30019 A3 16-03-1981
			CA 1092107 A1 23-12-1980
			CH 635079 A5 15-03-1983
			CS 219333 B2 25-03-1983
			CY 1246 A 31-08-1984
			DD 133563 A5 10-01-1979
			DE 2751258 A1 01-06-1978
			DK 500477 A ,B, 18-05-1978
			DK 508681 A ,B, 17-11-1981
			ES 464044 A1 01-08-1978
			FI 773448 A ,B, 18-05-1978
			FI 834519 A ,B, 09-12-1983
			FR 2371430 A1 16-06-1978
			GB 1595503 A 12-08-1981
			GB 1595502 A 12-08-1981
			HK 93086 A 12-12-1986
			HU 176709 B 28-04-1981

Form PCT/ISA/210 (parent family annex) (July 1992)

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT
 nation on patent family members

Int'l Application No
 PCT/EP 81/13140

Patent document cited in search report		Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
US 4352754	A		IE 46087 B1	23-02-1983
			IE 46088 B1	23-02-1983
			IL 53377 A	30-09-1982
			IN 150172 A1	07-04-1982
			IT 1126216 B	14-05-1986
			JP 1423995 C	15-02-1988
			JP 53063335 A	06-06-1978
			JP 62025658 B	04-06-1987
			JP 1515937 C	24-08-1989
			JP 62155218 A	10-07-1987
			JP 63066808 B	22-12-1988
			JP 1364046 C	09-02-1987
			JP 58113153 A	05-07-1983
			JP 61025697 B	17-06-1986
			LU 78513 A1	20-03-1978
			MX 4682 E	28-07-1982
			MY 38285 A	31-12-1985
			NL 7712567 A ,B,	19-05-1978
			NO 773901 A ,B,	19-05-1978
			PH 13611 A	05-08-1980
			PH 14740 A	20-11-1981
			PL 202177 A1	25-09-1978
			PT 67260 A ,B	01-12-1977
			RO 72905 A1	04-11-1981

US 4233217	A	11-11-1980	US 4210749 A	01-07-1980
			CA 974989 A1	23-09-1975
			GB 1268243 A	22-03-1972